

حمل الآن

مجاناً وحصرياً

المراجعة رقم (1)

الترم الاول



Sample Test

on Unit 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Judy does a lot of sports at
a. club b. school c. home d. garden
2. She walks to her house with her family.
a. aunt's b. uncle's c. grandma's d. grandpa's
3. Judy doesn't eat
a. candy b. chocolate c. pizza d. cakes
4. Her favorite fruits are bananas and
a. oranges b. mangoes c. apples d. watermelon

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Our house is so old. We need to it.
a. repaint b. recook c. reread d. rewrite
2. My dad is a He likes looking at animals and plants.
a. plumber b. scientist c. doctor d. driver

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

delicious - grapes - grow - chicken - sugar

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We [1] different kinds of them in Egypt. Mangoes and [2] grow in summer. We get [3] from sugarcane. Fruits are [4]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One day, an emperor in China gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most beautiful plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- Cheng was a/an
 a. vet b. scientist c. emperor d. gardener
- The seeds that the emperor gave to the gardeners were
 a. fresh b. cold c. dead d. alive

B. Answer the following questions.

- What was Cheng good at ?

- Who would be the next emperor ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I love burgers, [and] I only eat one a week.
- I like football, [or] I don't practice it every day.
- Sara's favorite sports are tennis [but] basketball.
- I like chocolate, candies [but] cakes.

6 Punctuate the following.

i think we grow rice in Egypt

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Damietta governorate

Guiding elements :

- What's Damietta famous for ?
- How is life in Damietta ?
- What can farmers grow in Damietta ?

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Snakes and are very dangerous.
a. cars b. birds c. crocodiles d. dogs
- They do a very job.
a. important b. bad c. dangerous d. small
- They eat, birds and lizards.
a. cats b. dogs c. insects d. camels
- We sometimes think some animals are or ugly, but they are all important.
a. nice b. beautiful c. good d. scary

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Camels are very and they can get angry.
a. noisy b. perfect c. kind d. delicious
- Horses eat and drink fresh water.
a. meat b. grass c. sand d. fish

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

grass – fresh – eyes – look – Horses

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. Horses eat [1] and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful [2] They can live in the desert, but they need people to [3] after them. [4] can live for 25 - 30 years.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- The fennec fox needs big to hear insects and small animals.
a. hands b. eyes c. ears d. legs
- The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at in the desert.
a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

B. Answer the following questions.

- Where does the fennec fox live ?
- Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- The fennec fox is [small] than other foxes.
- Rhim gazelles have [bigger] ears and long horns.
- How [heavier] is the horse ? - It's 390 kg.
- Camels are [noise] than horses.

6 Punctuate the following.

the bear is stronger than the pelican

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Camels"

Guiding elements :

flat feet - carry things - perfect

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My friend Selim likes and plants.
a. animals b. flowers c. farms d. parks
- He uses the to grow new plants.
a. roots b. seeds c. leaves d. trees
- The roots grow under the
a. tree b. soil c. table d. chair
- My friend becomes very when there is a flower.
a. sad b. angry c. worried d. happy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I didn't like the air in the city.
a. clear b. quiet c. polluted d. clean
- They use rainwater to the seeds.
a. make b. bring c. sell d. water

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

green – billion – rainwater – life – grew

My grandparents had a farm. They [1] many fruits. They used [2] to water the plants. They needed about a [3] liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land [4] They planted trees and flowers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about " ".
 a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes
2. Papyrus needs lots of to grow.
 a. sand b. waves c. water d. paper

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does papyrus grow ?

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The turtle is [than] slowest animal.
2. My bag is [heavy] than yours.
3. Who is the [fast] boy in the class ? - Adel.
4. This boy is [help]. He helps everyone.

6 Punctuate the following.

i like growing flowers

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

The life cycle of a sunflower

Guiding elements : soil - seed - grow

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test

on Unit 4

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My house is
a. big b. small c. tiny d. messy
2. I can play outside in our
a. house b. park c. street d. garden
3. My favorite room is the
a. bedroom b. living room c. kitchen d. bathroom
4. I can see the whole street from the
a. kitchen b. garden c. balcony d. class

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In the desert, people live in
a. tents b. apartments c. houseboats d. nests
2. The is where we go when we are sick.
a. post office b. school c. hospital d. supermarket

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

big – clothes – between – shopping mall – next

My name's Hana. I live in Cairo. There is a [1] in my street. I buy [2] and shoes from that shopping mall. The shopping mall is very [3] It's [4] to my school. There is a hospital on the other side of my house.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Omar works on tourist boats in summer with his father. One day, the boat stopped and Omar saw some children playing. Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please, help me !" Omar called his dad. Omar's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child. The child smiled and said, "Thank you so much !"

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Omar works on tourist
 a. buses b. boats c. cars d. planes
2. The children were
 a. swimming b. sleeping c. playing d. eating

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4. What happened to the small child ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There is a tree [under] to my house.
2. The shopping mall is [of] the supermarket and the bank.
3. The armchair is in [next] of the television.
4. [When] is your cat ? - It's under the chair.

6 Punctuate the following.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Hurghada

Guiding elements : beach - tourists - Sahara Desert

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test

on Unit 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mona is a/an.....
a. teacher b. electrician c. doctor d. nurse
2. Mona studied and practiced for years.
a. two b. six c. three d. four
3. She knows how to work safely with
a. toys b. animals c. electricity d. cars
4. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of.....
a. light b. pipes c. water d. night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A mail carrier your letters.
a. connects b. throws c. delivers d. puts
2. She loved to experiment. She was very.....
a. sad b. angry c. curious d. lazy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

older – put – house – job – tape measure

When Dina was a baby, she played with blocks. She [1] one block on top of another. When she was [2], she started making things. She made a little [3] for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a [4] and a pencil.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A mail carrier delivers your parcels. An electrician fixes sockets. A garbage collector collects the trash. Sometimes it's wet and messy, so we need a plumber to fix pipes and faucets. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. All these workers should work together to help people and make their life easier.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about different.....
 a. parcels b. pipes c. jobs d. sockets
2. The underlined word "**trash**" in the text means
 a. letter b. faucet c. pipe d. garbage

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the plumber do ?

4. Who fixes sockets ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Those toys..... [is] new.
2. This..... [are] my book.
3. This screwdriver..... [are] made of metal.
4. [Is] these your shoes ?

6 Punctuate the following.

what's Amira's job

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Mechanics

Guiding elements : repair shop - fix - cars

.....

Sample Test

on Unit 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I grow
a. tomatoes b. oranges c. potatoes d. apples
2. I pick the
a. leaves b. roots c. fruit d. garbage
3. I send a lot of the fruit to the
a. factory b. hospital c. park d. school
4. I also sell some of my oranges to the
a. school b. library c. supermarket d. club

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An helps me in the library.
a. vet b. engineer c. librarian d. guide
2. I explain the history to the tourists. I work in the industry.
a. education b. fishing c. farming d. tourism

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

engine – van – fish – disappointed – drives

There's an old fisherman in our village. The old fisherman [1]
around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his [2]
He was sad and [3] A mechanic looked at the old van's
[4] It was a simple problem. He fixed his van.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students
always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to
encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many
hours every day. A teacher can change their students' lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- This text is about ".....".
 a. Librarian b. Fishermen c. Nurses d. Teachers
- The underlined word "easy" is the opposite of
 a. quick b. slow c. safe d. difficult

B. Answer the following questions.

- What can a teacher change ?

- What do students always ask ?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- What should you [doing] to be an electrician ?
- I want to [being] a teacher.
- I feel sad because I don't [disobey] my mother.
- They are [appointed]. They couldn't win.

6 Punctuate the following.

it's my job to explain the history

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Different jobs

Guiding elements : • fisherman • librarian • cleaner

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Important Topics

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية التي وردت بالمنهج

Unit 1

"Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice. They grow vegetables and fruits. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

"Healthy food"

I like healthy food. I like fruits and vegetables. I don't like unhealthy food. I don't eat candy.

"Damietta governorate"

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen can catch a lot of fish in the sea. Domiat cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

"Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I do a lot of exercise. I also play basketball. I like walking. I don't eat a lot of candy.

"Egyptian farmers"

Egyptian farmers are very important. They grow many crops like rice. They grow fruit and vegetables for us to eat. They also keep animals. They raise chickens to get eggs and meat. It's a very important job.

Unit 2

"Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. But they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

"The horses"

Horses are strong animals. They can live in the desert. They have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. Horses are my favorite animals.

"The bears"

I like animals. My favorite animal is the bear. Bears eat fish. They use paws and claws to catch fish. My sister doesn't like bears. She thinks they are scary.

"Rhim gazelles"

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears and long horns. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

"Camels"

Camels have large, flat feet. They help us to carry things. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels can live without water for a long time.

"The fennec fox"

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It has big ears. It can hear insects. It has thick fur to be warm at night.

Unit 3

"How to grow tomatoes"

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. This is called germination. We water the plant every day. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

"Life on a farm"

I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We bring animals to the land. We use rainwater to water the seeds. I like the farm because it's quiet and beautiful. There are a lot of fruits and vegetables on the farm. I can also play with animals on the farm.

"The life cycle of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

"Agricultural habitat"

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow plants like bean plants and orange trees. They sell some oranges to the supermarket. People need these plants to eat.

"The life cycle of the sunflower"

First, we plant a sunflower seed in soil. Next, the seed germinates and starts to grow. It grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

Unit 4

"Your home"

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.

"Your village"

I live in a village near the Nile. I live in a house with my family. It's between a yellow house and a brown house. There are a lot of trees. I can play with animals. The village is quiet and beautiful.

"The direction to your house"

From the corner of Lateef Street, go straight ahead. Take the second right. Turn left at the supermarket. My house is next to the school.

"Living on a boat"

We live on a boat in the summer. My parents work on tourist boats. They travel up and down the Nile. I see many interesting places. I meet people from all over the world. I like the summer very much.

"Hurghada"

I live in Hurghada. It's on the Red Sea. There's a beach there. Tourists can go on safaris. It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the South of Hurghada.

"Your town"

This is my town. It's small, but it has stores, offices and many other places. My school is next to the hospital. Next to

the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends. It's a good place to live in.

"Your favorite room"

I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I talk with my family and do many things in the living room.

Unit 5

"Different jobs"

There are many different jobs. An electrician connects the electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our house clean. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels.

"Electricity"

Electricity is very dangerous. You can get an electric shock. To use electricity safely, never touch anything with wet hands. Always make sure your hands are dry before you touch anything electrical.

"A job you want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. An electrician connects electricity so people can use lights and watch TV. We should learn about safety with electricity.

"Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. On the one hand, he walks all

the day and gets a lot of exercise. On the other hand, the mail bag is very heavy. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job.

"Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

"Your father's job"

My father is an electrician. He always carries a screwdriver. He connects electricity. I want to be an electrician like my father.

Unit 6

"Jobs"

There are a lot of different jobs. Fishermen go out on a boat and catch fish. Farmers look after the crops. Librarians work at a school.

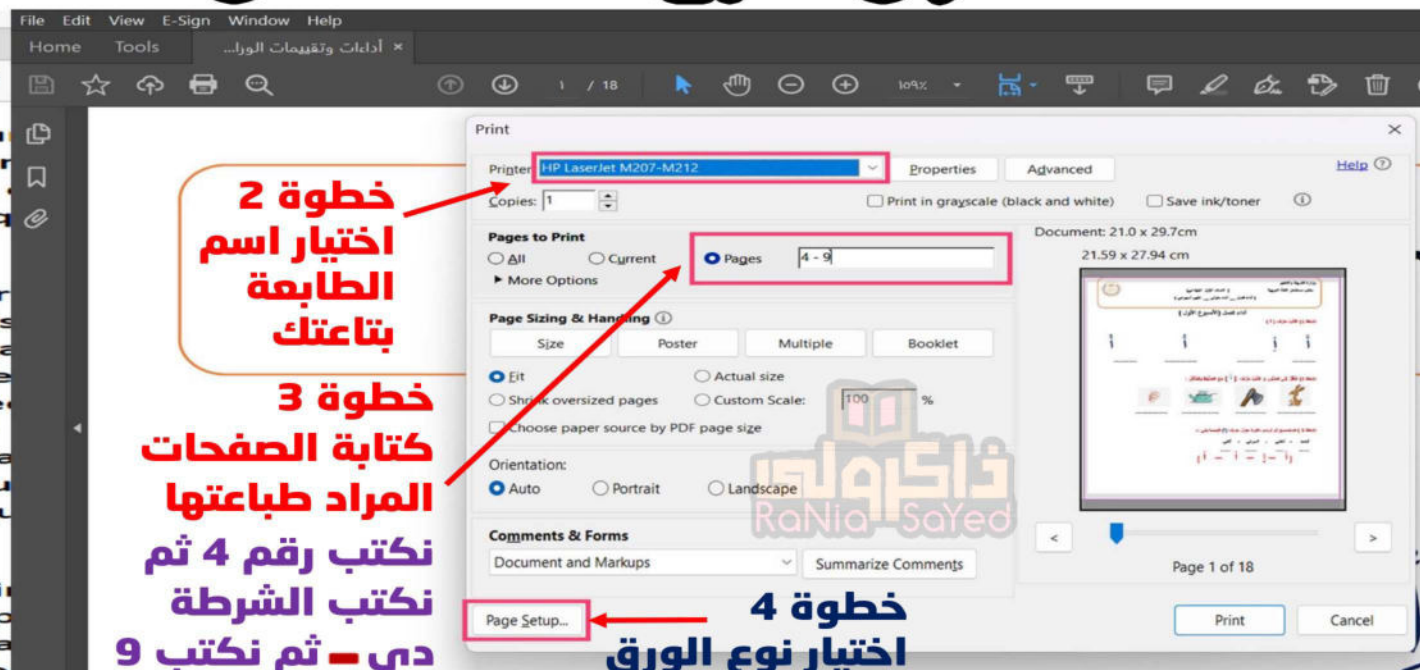
"A fisherman"

A fisherman wakes up early every day. He goes out on his boat. He catches fish. He sells the fish at the market. It's my favorite job. It's a very interesting job.

"The farmer"

My uncle is a farmer. He grows fruits and vegetables. He looks after the trees. He sells the crops at the market. He sends a lot of the fruits to the factory to make juice.

كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين مثلا ازاي نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9



حمل الآن

مجاناً وحصرياً

المراجعة رقم (2)

الترم الاول



Revision on Unit 1

I feel good

Vocabulary

foods	أطعمة - مأكولات	sugarcane	قصب السكر
grapes	عنب	seed	بذرة
watermelon	بطيخ	gardener	جنايني - بستاني
farmers	فلاحون - مزارعون	nutrients	مواد مغذية - مغذيات
vegetables	خضراوات	life	الحياة
fruits	فاكهة	land	أرض
candy	حلوى	rich in	غني بـ
salad	سلطة	honest	أمين
wheat	قمح	healthy	صحي
drinks	مشروبات	unhealthy	غير صحي - بصحة جيدة
fishermen	صيادون	banana milkshake	مخفوق الموز بالحليب
emperor	إمبراطور	grow	يزرع - ينمو
palace	قصر	raise - keep	يُربّي حيوانات
competition	مسابقة - منافسة	produce	يُنتج

Language

and و

- تربط بين جملتين تعبران عن أفكار متشابهة أو معنى واحد.

- Dad is a scientist and he likes looking at animals and plants.

But لكن

- تربط بين جملتين تعبران عن التناقض.

- I don't eat candy, but I like fruit.

The prefix "re" means again

البادئة "re" التي تعني مرة أخرى

verb	re + verb	
do	redo	يعيد فعل
clean	reclean	يعيد تنظيف

Pronunciation & Math

short vowels

حروف متحركة قصيرة

في النطق

bag

mix

mom

long vowels

حروف متحركة طويلة

في النطق

cake

nose

rice

كيك - كعكة

أنف

أرز

Large digits الأرقام الكبيرة

544,432: five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

Ascending order الترتيب التصاعدي

الترتيب التصاعدي هو ترتيب الأرقام من الأصغر للأكبر:

(2 - 5 - 8 - 10 - 20 - 32 - 44)

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
look ينظر - يبدو	looked	answer يجيب - يرد	answered
listen يستمع	listened	like يحب	liked
check يفحص - يراجع	checked	raise يُرَبِّي	raised
ask يسأل	asked	produce يُنتِج	produced

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
feel يشعر - يحس	felt	find out يكتشف	found out
come يأتي	came	make يجعل - يصنع	made
think يعتقد - يظن	thought	see يرى	saw
grow يزرع	grew	eat يأكل	ate
have يمتلك - يتناول	had	say يقول	said

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
work يعمل	worked	discuss يناقش	discussed
walk يمشي	walked	play يلعب	played
talk يتكلم	talked	want يريد	wanted
complete يكمل	completed	exercise يَتمرَن	exercised
love يحب	loved	practice يمارس	practiced

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
drink يشرب	drank	hurt يُؤْلِم	hurt

Unit 1

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
plant	يزرع	planted		paint	يدهن - يَلَوِّن	painted	
happen	يَحْدُثْ	happened		clean	ينظف	cleaned	
travel	يسافر	traveled		lie	يكذب	lied	
mix	يخلط - يمزج	mixed		try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
am, is, are	يكون	was - were		put	يضع	put	
have - has	يملك - يتناول	had		read	يقرأ	read	
give	يعطي	gave		win	يفوز	won	
take	يأخذ	took		lose	يخسر - يفقد	lost	
make	يجعل - يصنع	made		bring	يُحضِر	brought	

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
need	يحتاج	needed		present	يُقدِّم	presented	
wash	يغسل	washed		decide	يُقرِّر	decided	
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)		live	يعيش	lived	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
catch	يصاد - يمسك	caught		speak	يتحدث	spoke	
write down	يُدوِّن	wrote down		hear	يسمع	heard	
know	يعرف	knew		show	يعرض	showed	
cut	يقطع - يجرع	cut		do - does	يؤدي - يفعل	did	

Lesson 1

Dictation:

.....	أطعمة	.....	مشروب
.....	عنب	.....	العشاء
.....	لبن	sugarcane	.....
.....	أرز	watermelon	.....
.....	فلاحون	meat	.....
.....	خضراوات	breakfast	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يرى	have	.....
..... يبني	make	.....
..... يُطعم	get	.....

Lesson 2



Dictation:

.....	فاكهة	.....	رياضة
.....	كولا	.....	بطيخ
.....	حلو	banana milkshake	.....
.....	شَاطِئَة	something sweet	.....
.....	محراء	unhealthy drinks	.....
.....	بصحة جيدة - صحي	video games	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يمارس - يَتمرَن	cut	.....
..... يمشي	talk	.....
..... يؤلَم	exercise	.....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

.....	الإمبراطور القادم	.....	أمانة
.....	قصر	.....	ميت
.....	جنايني - بستاني	competition	.....
.....	أمين - صادق	empty pot	.....
.....	بذرة	look after	.....
.....	يزرع - نبات	good at	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يفوز	lie	.....
..... يخسر	look after	.....

Lessons 4&5



Dictation:

.....	أرض	.....	مشهور
.....	قمح	.....	سمك
.....	الحياة	Damietta	.....
..... مواد مُغذّية - مُغذّيات		governorate	.....
.....	ليمون	rich in	.....
.....	ميا دون	guavas	.....

Revision on Unit 2

Desert animals

Vocabulary

camel	جمل	fennec fox	ثعلب الفئك
crocodile	تمساح	desert	صحراء
lizard	سحلية	leaves	أوراق الشجر
spider	عنكبوت	thick fur	فرو سميك
insects	حشرات	snake	ثعبان
hump	سنام الجمل	beak	منقار
bear	دب	wing	جناح
pelican	بجعة	protect	تحمي
river	نهر	hungry	جائع
paw	قدم الحيوان	scary	مخيف
claws	مخالب	dangerous	خطير
gazelle	غزاله	noisy	مزعج - صاخب
horns	قرون	huge	ضخم
coat	جلد الحيوان	perfect for	مثالي لـ

Language

(Adjectives) comparison المقارنة

- Comparative degree:

- تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين اثنين (شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء وهكذا).

- نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than).

- Horses are **faster than** camels.
- The new hotel is **nicer than** the old hotel.

- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (more) أو (less) وبعدها (than).

- Flowers are **more beautiful than** grass.
- A fox is **less dangerous than** a snake.

Pronunciation & Math

/p/ and /b/ sounds

p	b
pelican	bird
pear	bear
pea	bee
pin	beak

Fractions

الكسور

denominator ← $\frac{1}{4}$ → numerator
المقام البسط

- نحن نستخدم الكسور في حياتنا اليومية، على سبيل المثال:

$\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{1}{4}$.
 $\frac{1}{2}$ is smaller than $\frac{3}{4}$.

Unit 2

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
cross	يَعبُر	crossed		control	يتحكم	controlled	
help	يساعد	helped		agree	يوافق	agreed	
need	يحتاج	needed		use	يستخدم	used	
talk	يتكلم	talked		close	يغلق	closed	
stop	يتوقف	stopped		live	يعيش	lived	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
can	يستطيع	could		eat	يأكل	ate	
get	يحصل على	got		write	يكتب	wrote	
think	يعتقد - يظن	thought		read	يقرأ	read	

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
discuss	يناقش	discussed		carry	يحمل	carried	
walk	يمشي	walked					

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
make	يجعل - يصنع	made		drink	يشرب	drank	
come in	يدخل	came in		have	لديه - عنده	had	

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
reach	يصل إلى	reached		open	يفتح	opened	
lift	يرفع	lifted		describe	يصف	described	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
see	يرى	saw		understand	يفهم	understood	

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
finish	يُنتهي	finished		weigh	يزن	weighed	
answer	يرد - يجيب	answered		look	يبدو	looked	
protect	يحمي	protected		include	يتضمن	included	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
draw	يرسم	drew		make sure	يتأكد	made sure	

Lesson 1

Dictation:

.....	طائر	.....	مخيف
.....	جمل	.....	ضخم
.....	تمساح	fennec fox	.....
.....	عنكبوت	insects	.....
.....	سحلية	cute	.....
.....	ثعبان	dangerous	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يعيش	control	.....
..... ينظر	eat	.....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

.....	حصان	.....	لذيذ
.....	جميل	.....	صحراء
.....	سنام الجمل	perfect for	.....
.....	قوي	large, flat feet	.....
.....	مدهش	on the sand	.....
.....	حشائش - عشب	fresh water	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يعبر	live	.....
..... يَحْمِل	come in	.....

Lesson 3



Dictation:

جائع	دُب	.....
غاضب	بجعة	.....
	نهر	juicy fish
	قدم الحيوان	reach for
	مطالب	Excuse me.
	مدهش	interesting

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يرفع	open	.....
يصل إلى	see	.....

Dictation:

.....	سحالي	.....	حشرات
.....	قرون	.....	حار
.....	صحراء	during the day	.....
.....	جُلد الحيوان	at night	.....
.....	أوراق الشجر	thick fur	.....
.....	غزالة	small mice	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يحمي	draw	.....
..... يزن	answer	.....

Revision on Unit 3

Why do we grow plants?

Vocabulary

leaves	أوراق الشجر	agricultural habitat	موطن زراعي
seeds	بذور	desert habitat	موطن صحراوي
roots	جذور	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
soil	ترية	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
shoot	فسيلة - نبتة	bean plant	نبات الفول
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	reed	بوص - قَصَب
noise	ضوضاء	sunflower	زهرة دوار الشمس
papyrus	نبات البردي	acacia	شجرة السنط
paper	ورق	daisy	زهرة اللؤلؤية
sandals	صنل	lake	بحيرة
river	نهر	germination	يُنْبَت
process	عملية	famous	مشهور
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	proud of	فخور بـ
grandparents	الجَدَّين	work hard	يعمل بجد

Language

(Adjectives) comparison المقارنة

- Superlative degree:

- نستخدم للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص، أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات، أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء وهكذا.
- نضيف للصفة القصيرة (**est**) ونضع قبلها كلمة (**the**).

- The giraffe is **the tallest** animal.
- The lion is **the strongest** animal.

- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (**the most**) أو (**the least**) ونفيق الصفة كما هي.

- The rose is **the most beautiful** flower.
- That unit is **the least** difficult one in the book.

The suffix “-ful”

- The suffix (**ful**) (لاحقة) means “**full of**”.

Noun of verb

Adjective

beauty	جَمال	beautiful	جميل
color	ألوان	colorful	مُزركش الألوان
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون

Pronunciation & Math

the /sw/ and /sl/ sounds

/sw/		/sl/	
swim	يسبح	slice	شريحة
sweet	حلوى	sleep	ينام
swan	بجعة	slippers	شبشب

Large numbers up to billions

1000	100,000	1,000,000
a thousand	a hundred thousand	a million
10,000,000	100,000,000	1,000,000,000
ten million	a hundred million	billion

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
look ينظر - يبدو	looked	want يريد	wanted
plant يزرع	planted	talk يتكلم	talked
call يُدعى - يُسمّى	called	share يشارك	shared
water يروي - يسقي	watered	die يموت	died

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
grow يزرع	grew	become يصبح	became
come يأتي	came	find يجد	found
see يرى	saw	have - has لديه - عنده	had
take يأخذ	took	think يعتقد - يظن	thought

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
work يعمل	worked	compare يقارن	compared
need يحتاج	needed	live يعيش	lived

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
turn يُحوّل	turned	decide يُقرّر	decided
use يستخدم	used	change يُغيّر - يتغير	changed

Unit 3

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
am - is - are	يكون	was - were		swim	يسبح	swam	
buy	يشترى	bought		sweep	يكنس	swept	
bring	يُحضِر	brought		sleep	ينام	slept	
understand	يفهم	understood		sell	يبيع	sold	

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
start	يبدأ	started		face	يواجه	faced	
paint	يُلوّن - يدهن	painted		die	يموت	died	
clean	يُنظّف	cleaned		drop	يُسْقِط	dropped	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
put	يضع	put		think	يعتقد - يظن	thought	
begin	يبدأ	began		do - does	يؤدي - يفعل	did	
make	يجعل - يمنع	made		burn	يحرق - يحترق	burnt (burned)	

Lesson 1

Dictation:

.....	زهرة	.....	نبات
.....	بذور	.....	أوراق الشجر
.....	جذور	germination process	.....
.....	فسيلة - نبتة	balcony	.....
.....	تربة	awesome	.....
.....	ضوء الشمس	tomatoes	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يموت	become	.....
..... يزرع	find	.....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

.....	نهر	.....	زهرة دوار الشمس
.....	بحيرة	.....	باذنجان
.....	زهرة اللوتس	agricultural habitat	.....
.....	نبات الفول	desert habitat	.....
.....	بوص - قَصْب	tamarisk	.....
.....	وردة	orange tree	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يحتاج	work	.....
..... يعيش	produce	.....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

.....	جاف	.....	طوى
.....	أرض	.....	ششب
.....	مياه الأمطار	on the farm	.....
.....	صعب	work hard	.....
.....	فوضاء	proud of	.....
.....	الجديين	forty years ago	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يزرع	bring	.....
..... يبيع	decide	.....

Lessons 4&5



Dictation:

.....	نبات البردي	.....	أعلى - فوق
.....	ورق	.....	دلتا النيل
.....	مشهور	Ancient Egyptians	.....
.....	صندل	get taller	.....
.....	بسلال	germinate	.....
.....	عملية	used	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... تبدأ	drop	.....
..... تفتح - تتفتح	face	.....

Revision on Unit 4

Where do you live?

Vocabulary

bedroom	حجرة نوم	office	مكتب
bathroom	حمام	tourist boat	قارب سياحي
living room	حجرة معيشة	worker	عامل - عاملة
dining room	حجرة طعام	city	مدينة كبيرة
kitchen	مطبخ	safari	رحلة لرؤية الحيوانات في البرية
balcony	بلكونة - شُرفة	tourist	سائح
houseboat	منزل عائِم	restaurant	مطعم
tent	خيمة	bazaar	سوق تجاري - بازار
apartment	شقة	behind	خلف
hospital	مستشفى	above	فوق
post office	مكتب بريد	next to	بجوار
shopping mall	مركز تسوُّق - مول	between	بين
park	منتزه - حديقة عامة	in front of	أمام
museum	متحف	under	تحت

Language

Prepositions of place

in	أعلى - فوق	above	فِي
on	بجوار	next to	على
under	بين	between	تحت
behind	أمام	in front of	خلف

Asking and giving directions:

- Excuse me, where is the hospital?

- Go straight ahead.
- Turn left.
- It's on the left.
- Take the second right.
- Turn right.
- It's on the right.
- It's on the corner.
- Take the second left.

Pronunciation

the /f/ and /v/ sounds

/f/	/v/
face	cave
fan	van
foot	living room
fish	vegetables

Unit 4

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
relax يستريح - يسترخي	relaxed	play يلعب	played
help يساعد	helped	organize يُنظِّم	organized
sound يبدو	sounded	move to ينتقل إلى	moved to
talk about يتكلم عن	talked about	live يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do / does يؤدي - يفعل	did	make يصنع	made
see يرى	saw	read يقرأ	read

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
learn يتعلم	learned (learnt)	connect يربط - يُوصِّل	connected
work يعمل	worked	listen يستمع	listened

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
buy يشتري	bought	go يذهب	went
send يُرسل	sent	say يقول	said

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
turn يستدير	turned	call يتصل بـ	called
visit يزور	visited	jump يقفز	jumped
follow يتبع	followed	save يُنقذ	saved
shout يصيح - يصرخ	shouted	smile يبتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
take يأخذ	took	speak يتحدث	spoke
meet يقابل	met	fall يسقط - يقع	fell

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
add يضيف	added	remember يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
draw يرسم	drew	make يجعل - يصنع	made

Lesson 1



Dictation:

.....	حجرة نوم	.....	بلكونة - شُرْفَة
.....	حجرة معيشة	.....	بيت
.....	مطبخ	apartment	.....
.....	حَقَام	house	.....
.....	خيمة	houseboat	.....
.....	حجرة طعام	take a shower	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يسترخي	organize	.....
..... يبدو	see	.....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

.....	مدرسة	.....	أمام
.....	مستشفى	.....	خلف
.....	مكتب بريد	shopping mall	.....
.....	منتزه - حديقة عامة	supermarket	.....
.....	متحف	village	.....
.....	بين	above	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يعمل	buy	.....
..... يتعلم	send	.....

Lesson 3

Dictation:

.....	قارب سياحي	.....	محطة
.....	الصيف	.....	اللغة الصينية
.....	عامل - عاملة	Turn right	.....
.....	بنك - مصرف	Turn left	.....
.....	مدينة	Go straight ahead	.....
.....	عند الزاوية	sports club	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يستدير	take	.....
..... يُنقِذ	meet	.....

Dictation:

.....	مدينة كبيرة	.....	الصحراء الكبرى
.....	سائح	.....	رحلة لرؤية الحيوانات في البرية
.....	الناس - أشخاص	east of Egypt	.....
.....	سوق تجاري - بازار	Hurghada	.....
.....	مطعم	interesting things	.....
.....	البحر الأحمر	map	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يتذكر	make	.....
..... يضيف	draw	.....

Revision on Unit 5

Where do you work?

Vocabulary

plumber	سباك	screwdriver	مِفْكَ
electrician	كهربائي	tape measure	شريط قياس
mechanic	ميكانيكي	safety	أمان
mail carrier	ساعي بريد	mathematician	عالِم رياضيات
bus driver	سائق أتوبيس	architect	مهندس معماري
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	dentist	طبيب أسنان
electricity	كهرباء	weather	طقس
electric shock	صدمة كهربية	pros	مميزات
socket	كُبْس النور (بريزة)	cons	عيوب
plug	فيشة - يضع فيشة	report	تقرير
flash	وميض	patient	مبور
lightning	البرق	curious	محب للاستطلاع - فضولي
fix	يصلح	deliver	يُوصَل - يُسَلَّم
faucet	حنفية - منبور	look after	يعتني بـ - يهتم بـ

Language

This – That – These – Those

This is ▶▶▶ هذا - هذه (للمفرد القريب)

▶ This is the socket the electrician is fixing.

That is ▶▶▶ ذلك - تلك (للمفرد البعيد)

▶ That's the water dripping from the faucet.

These are ▶▶▶ هؤلاء (للمجمع القريب)

▶ These are the plumber's tools.

Those are ▶▶▶ أولئك (للمجمع البعيد)

▶ Those are the mail carrier's parcels.

Pronunciation & Math

Syllable المقطع

- الكلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية تتكون من مقطع واحد أو أكثر، والمقطع هو جزء من الكلمة يحتوي على صوت حرف متحرك واحد. لاحظ عدد المقاطع في الكلمات الآتية:

teach.er	2	plumb.er	2
ar.chi.tect	3	me.chan.ic	3
el.ec.tri.cian	4	doc.tor	2

Stress (التشديد)

- التشديد هو أن نُظْهِرَ أو نُمَيِّزَ أو نُثَبِّرَ مقطع معين في الكلمة في النطق أكثر من غيره.
- لاحظ المقطع الذي يكون عليه التشديد في الكلمات الآتية:

plumb.er	den.tist
teach.er	me.chan.ic
build.er	doc.tor

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
fix	يصلح	fixed		like	يحب	liked	
happen	يَحْدُثُ	happened		love	يحب	loved	
wait	ينتظر	waited		hope	يأمل - يتمنى	hoped	
need	يحتاج	needed		arrive	يصل	arrived	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
forget	ينسى	forgot		take out	يُخرِج	took out	
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove		put out	يُطفئ	put out	

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
deliver	يُوصِل - يُسَلِّم	delivered		travel	يسافر	traveled	
repair	يصلح	repaired		touch	يلمس	touched	
drip	ينقط	dripped		control	يتحكم	controlled	
collect	يجمع	collected		practice	يمارس - يتدرب	practiced	
work	يعمل	worked		study	يُذَرِّس - يذاكر	studied	

Unit 5

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
explain	يشرح	explained		call	يتصل	called
start	يبدأ	started		carry	يحمل	carried
learn	يتعلم	learned (learnt)		change	يُغَيِّر	changed

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
look after	يُعتَنِي بـ	looked after		use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up		choose	يختار	chose

Lesson 1

Dictation:

.....	سباك	.....	حنفية - صنبور
.....	كهربائي	.....	قمامة
.....	ميكانيكي	mail carrier	.....
.....	سائق أتوبيس	garbage collector	.....
.....	وظيفة	parcel	.....
.....	أنبوبة - ماسورة	messy	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يصلح	forget	.....
..... يأمل - يتمنى	take out	.....

Lesson 2



Dictation:

.....	كهرباء	.....	فني كهرباء
.....	(شيء) كهربائي	.....	مقابلة (صحفية)
.....	كُبس النور (بريزة)	repair shop	.....
.....	فيشة - يضع الفيشة	speed of light	.....
.....	وميض	wet hands	.....
.....	البرق	close to	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يعمل	deliver	.....
..... يلمس	travel	.....

Dictation:

.....	مَقَك	.....	مكعبات
.....	عروسة لعبة - دُمية	.....	رحلة
.....	مُعَلِّم	safety	.....
.....	طبيب أسنان	curious	.....
.....	مهندس معماري	mathematician	.....
.....	شريط قياس	experiment (v)	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
.....
يبدأ	explain	.....
يتصل	learn	.....

Lessons 4&5

Dictation:

.....	مميزات	.....	نقاط
.....	عيوب	.....	ألم في الظهر
.....	قائمة	get a lot of exercise	.....
.....	تقرير	wake up	.....
.....	طقس	take away	.....
.....	ثقل	bring	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يستخدم - يستعمل	wake up	.....
..... يعتني بـ	choose	.....

Revision on Unit 6

What do you do?

Vocabulary

tourism	السياحة	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
education	التعليم	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج
transportation	النقل	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
farming	الزراعة	energy sources	مصادر الطاقة
fishing	الصيد	renewable	متجدد
industry	صناعة	non-renewable	غير متجدد
librarian	أمين مكتبة	oil	بتترول
farmer	فلاح	coal	فحم
fisherman	صياد	gas	غاز
library	مكتبة	wood	خشب
factory	مصنع	engine	مُحرّك - موتور
materials	مواد خام	surprised	مندعش
lovely	جميل	hard work	عمل شاق
cut down	يقطع	advice	نصيحة

Language

○ What do you do?

👉 I'm a fisherman. I catch fish.

👉 I'm a farmer. I grow oranges.

The prefix "dis..." البادئة

disagree	يرفض	disappointed	مُحْبط
disappear	يختفي	disobey	يعصي
dislike	لا يحب		

Pronunciation & Math

Sound discrimination الفرق بين نطق الأصوات

○ لاحظ الفرق بين نُطق الصوتين (u /ʌ/) (a /æ/):

a /æ/	ran	جرى	van	عربة مغلقة	man	رجل
-------	-----	-----	-----	------------	-----	-----

u /ʌ/	run	يجري	bus	أتوبيس	sun	شمس
-------	-----	------	-----	--------	-----	-----

○ لاحظ الفرق بين نطق الصوتين (i /ɪ/) (e /e/):

e /e/	ten	عشرة	fresh	طازج	pencil	قلم رصاص
-------	-----	------	-------	------	--------	----------

i /ɪ/	tin	علبة صفيح	fish	سمكة - سمك	fix	يصلح
-------	-----	-----------	------	------------	-----	------

A prime number (العدد الأولي)

- العدد الأولي: هو العدد الذي يمكن قسمته على نفسه وعلى الرقم "1" فقط مثل:

2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 19, 23, 41

- ملحوظة: العددين "0-1" لا يعتبران أعدادًا أولية.

Unit 6

Lesson 1

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pick يلتقط - يقطف	picked	add يضيف	added
explain يشرح	explained	connect يربط - يُوَصِّل	connected
help يساعد	helped	sound يبدو	sounded
need يحتاج	needed	look after يعتني بـ	looked after

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch يصطاد - يمسك	caught	buy يشتري	bought
sell يبيع	sold	find يجد	found
grow يزرع	grew	know يعرف	knew
give يعطي	gave	come back يعود - يرجع	came back
send يرسل	sent	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
tell يخبر	told	go out يخرج	went out

Lesson 2

Conjugation of Verbs

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	cut down يقطع	cut down
give يعطي	gave	run out ينفد	ran out

Lesson 3

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
plant	يزرع	planted		disagree	يرفض	disagreed	
want	يريد	wanted		dislike	لا يحب - يكره	disliked	
fix	يصلح	fixed		disobey	يعصي	disobeyed	
pass	يجتاز	passed		disappear	يختفي	disappeared	
worry	يقلق	worried		disappoint	يُحْزِن	disappointed	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
drive	يقود (مَرْكَبَة)	drove		hear	يسمع	heard	
see	يرى	saw		stand	يقف	stood	
teach	يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught		give	يُعْطِي	gave	

Lessons 4&5

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
answer	يجيب	answered		respect	يحترم	respected	
ask	يسأل	asked		listen	يستمع	listened	
need	يحتاج	needed		encourage	يشجع	encouraged	

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
teach	يُعَلِّم - يُدَرِّس	taught		get off	ينزل من (مَرْكَبَة)	got off	
throw	يرمي - يلقي	threw		put	يضع	put	

Lesson 1

Dictation:

.....	السياحة	.....	مرشد
.....	الزراعة	.....	صياد
.....	الصيد	transportation	.....
.....	صناعة	nutrients	.....
.....	التعليم	hotel	.....
.....	مزارع - فلاح	librarian	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يصطاد - يمسك	go out	.....
..... يلتقط - يقطف	come back	.....

Lesson 2

Dictation:

طاقة شمسية	غاز
طاقة الأمواج	خشب
طاقة الرياح	energy sources
متجددة	non-renewable
بتروول	grew bigger
فحم	mango seed

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعطي		cut down	
يأكل		run out	

Lesson 3

Dictation:

.....	مُحَرِّك - موتور	.....	قلم رصاص
.....	جميل	.....	يحصل على
.....	مُنْدَهَش - متفاجئ	.....	simple problem
.....	أَتَوَيِّس	.....	fresh fish
.....	عربة مغلقة	.....	sun
.....	علبة مفيح	.....	disappointed

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يُعَلِّم	disapper	.....
..... يقود (مَرْكَبَة) - يسوق	see	.....

Dictation:

.....	صبور	.....	شخص بالغ
.....	مثير	.....	طبيب
.....	أفكار	hard work	.....
.....	نصيحة	show respect	.....
.....	بغناية	ready	.....
.....	يُشجّع	get off the bus	.....

Verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يُحِبُّ	listen	.....
..... يلقي - يرمي	need	.....

FINAL REVISION

هدية كتاب **Step Ahead** لطلاب الصف الرابع بالإجابات النموذجية

المراجعة النهائية استعدادًا لامتحان نصف العام طبقًا لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة

Revision On Unit (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

raise – grow – lunch – farmers – country

Egyptian ① are very clever. Lots of the food we eat every day comes from our ② We ③ rice, tomatoes and onions in Egypt. Egyptian farmers ④ chickens, ducks, cows, goats, sheep and many other animals. Egyptian farmers produce many things we buy at the market every day.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

live – catch – cheese – grow – governorate

The land in Damietta ① is rich in nutrients. The farmers can ② rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen ③ thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati ④ is very famous. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life is good in Damietta!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

walk – healthy – watermelon – fruits – milkshake

I think I'm ① I do a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, I ② to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking because I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite ③ are bananas and ④ My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake!

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**competition – emperor – seed – grow – palace**

Cheng lived long ago in China. The most important man in China was the ① He lived in a beautiful palace. One day the emperor said, "There will be a ② I will give a seed to each gardener. The one who can ③ the most beautiful plant from the ④ will be the next emperor."

5 Choose the correct answer:

- ① We should eat (unhealthy - candy - healthy - sweet) food.
- ② Egyptian farmers (produce - promise - practice - buy) many things we eat every day.
- ③ We have (breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper) in the afternoon.
- ④ Fishermen (grow - keep - raise - catch) fish from the sea.
- ⑤ In a (test - competition - farming - exam), we try to win.
- ⑥ We have (supper - breakfast - lunch - dinner) in the evening.
- ⑦ The land near the Nile is rich in (water - nutrients - fish - rocks).
- ⑧ Egyptian farmers raise (chickens - tomatoes - sugar cane - potatoes).
- ⑨ Mangoes and grapes are (drinks - candies - vegetables - fruit).
- ⑩ Egyptian farmers grow (cows - goats - rice - chickens).
- ⑪ He doesn't lie. He is (unkind - honest - hungry - angry).
- ⑫ We have (breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper) in the morning.
- ⑬ The farmers can (grow - raise - plant - seed) cows on their farms.
- ⑭ We get (onions - eggs - rice - milk) from chickens.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1** I don't eat candy, (**and**) I like fruit.
- 2** He (**painted**) his house. This means he painted it again.
- 3** I eat vegetables (**but**) I exercise.
- 4** Nada (**cleaned**) her bike. This means she cleaned it again.
- 5** I drink cola, (**and**) I want to drink more water.
- 6** The chef (**made**) rice. This means he made it again.
- 7** I play basketball (**but**) I play football in the park.
- 8** Shaimaa (**did**) her homework. This means she did it again.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1** my cousin judy and i play video games on tuesday

▶

- 2** does talia come from egypt

▶

- 3** do you think you're healthy, judy

▶

- 4** the most important man in china was the emperor

▶

Revision On Unit (2)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dangerous – helpful – important – cute – fox

Animals and birds are different. Not all animals and birds are
 ① Some animals are ② like crocodiles. Spiders
 are scary. Snakes are scary and ugly. But all animals are very
 ③ They are all ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

desert – animals – legs – sand – strong

I love camels. They are very important ① in Egypt. They are
 ② and they can carry people and things across the ③
 They are tall animals, with thin ④

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

kind – stronger – hungry – strong – scared

The bear is a strong animal. It is ① than the pelican. They are both
 very ② They see a big, juicy fish. The pelican is ③ of
 the bear because it's very strong, but the bear is very ④, and it
 says, "I think you are hungrier than me. You can have the fish."

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coats – horns – protect – gazelles – leaves

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they
 walk around looking for grass, ① and plants to eat. They have
 big ears and long ② They have yellow-white ③
 which ④ them from the sun.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1** It's a (**helpful** - dangerous - scary - cute) animal. It helps to control the number of these small animals.
- 2** It's hot in the desert during the (**day** - night - morning - evening).
- 3** The elephant is (**small** - huge - few - little).
- 4** Bears have sharp (**claws** - beaks - feathers - hair) on their feet.
- 5** Snakes are (**cute** - beautiful - nice - dangerous).
- 6** Rhinoceroses have big ears and long (**teeth** - horns - coats - legs) on their heads.
- 7** The crocodile is a (**nice** - cute - scary - small) animal.
- 8** Camels have (**little** - small - large - tiny), flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
- 9** The pelican has one (**claw** - beak - wing - ear) to eat with.
- 10** The pelican has two (**wings** - beaks - fur - heads) to fly with.
- 11** (**Crocodiles** - Spiders - Horses - Camels) live in rivers and lakes.
- 12** The (**desert** - farm - sea - river) is a very hot place.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1** A mouse is (**small**) than an elephant.
- 2** How (**heavy**) is the camel? - 1.4 – 1.8 m.
- 3** A snake is (**dangerous**) than a fox.
- 4** Dogs are (**thin**) than elephants.
- 5** How (**tall**) is it? - 380 - 550 kg.

- 6 Ice cream is (delicious) than butter.
- 7 Parrots are (noisy) than spiders.
- 8 How (long) is it? - 88 kph.
- 9 The red flower is (beautiful) than the white flower.
- 10 I think cats are (nice) than dogs.
- 11 How (fast) does it live? - 25 - 30 years.

7 Punctuate the following:

1 mom, sara and tarek like animals

▶

2 which animal does adel like

▶

3 alexandria is a beautiful egyptian city

▶

Revision On Unit (3)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shoot – tomato – soil – germination – sunlight

The ① process is awesome. We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs ② and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the ③ Then it grows a ④ and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

water – rain – lakes – agricultural – habitat

Farmers work in the ① habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near rivers and ② need a lot of ③ In the desert ④, there is not much rain. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Papyrus – weather – river – Egyptians – plant

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient ① used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. ② needs a lot of water and warm ③ to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the ④

4 Choose the correct answer:

① There isn't much rain in the (agricultural - desert - sea - lake) habitat.

② The (roots - leaves - flowers - branches) grow under the soil.

- 3 We plant the (seed - soil - leaf - flower) and the plant grows.
- 4 The (soil - flower - tree - shoot) is a small plant.
- 5 A billion is a (hundred - thousand - ten - twenty) million.
- 6 Trees have a lot of green (leaves - seeds - shoots - roots).
- 7 She has to be (careful - useful - helpful - careless) with the knife.
- 8 The roots grow under the (seeds - flowers - soil - leaves).
- 9 Farmers work in the (desert habitat - seas - rivers and lakes - agricultural habitat).
- 10 We love (careful - careless - lonely - helpful) people because they help us.
- 11 Plants near (rivers - farms - desert - fields) need a lot of water.
- 12 There is not much rain in the (agricultural habitat - desert habitat - rivers - lakes).
- 13 The seed (germinates - closes - dies - stops) and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
- 14 Plants near (desert - land - farms - lakes) need a lot of water.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My cat is the (big) on our street.
- 2 He is a (care) driver.
- 3 I think maize is (delicious) of these three plants.
- 4 My city is (nicer) place to live.
- 5 This is a (color) painting.

6 I think a rose is (beautiful) flower.

7 My grandpa is very (help).

8 I have (heavy) suitcase.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 ancient egyptians used papyrus to make paper

▶

2 lucas lives on a farm in the united states

▶

3 why does uncle ali grow plants in the balcony

▶

4 where does jana live

▶

5 they go to the farm in september

▶

Revision On Unit (4)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rock – desert – cloth – tent – houseboat

My friend and her family live on a ① It's small, but she loves living on water. In the ②, some people live in a ③ This home is made of ④

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

between – in – behind – next – village

My name's Zain. I live in a ① next to the Nile. I live ② a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is ③ a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees ④ the house.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

city – kind – food – supermarket – fresh

This is Mona. She works at the ① near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy ② Mona checks the food is ③ She helps us when we can't find something. She is very ④ and happy.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tourists – restaurants – beautiful – town – beach

In Hurghada, there's a ① and there are lots of cool stores and ② There is also the Sahara Desert where lots of ③ go on safaris. Sahl Hasheesh, which has an old ④ and a new town, is in Hurghada. The old town has some beautiful houses.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1** That village is (in front - next - behind - between) to a big city.
- 2** She lives in a big (city - farm - village - tent). It's noisy and polluted.
- 3** The ball is (between - under - next - in front) the table.
- 4** I sleep in my (bedroom - living room - dining room - kitchen).
- 5** My house is (under - in - in front - between) two shops.
- 6** We live in a/an (house - apartment - tent - houseboat) on the fourth floor.
- 7** The chair is (behind - in - on - between) the door.
- 8** We send letters at the (hospital - shopping mall - post office - school).
- 9** They live in a (hotel - tent - garden - houseboat). It's made of cloth.
- 10** The park is (between - next to - in front - behind) of the museum.
- 11** We watch TV in the (bathroom - living room - dining room - kitchen).
- 12** The book is (between - front of - in - next) the bag.
- 13** They live in a/an (houseboat - apartment - house - tent) with a garden.
- 14** The bag is (between - in front - next - on) the desk.
- 15** He lives on a (houseboat - cave - tent - hotel). He loves living on water.
- 16** There's a kite (above - under - in front - between) our house.
- 17** She goes on (safaris - deserts - bazaars - stores) to see animals in their natural habitat.
- 18** I buy clothes and shoes at the (shopping mall - post office - school - office).

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My house is (next) the tall house and the tree.
- 2 The couch is (on) the living room.
- 3 The kitchen is (in front) to the living room.
- 4 The hospital is (next) of the school.
- 5 Look! A plane is flying (on) our house.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 where are mom and talia
▶
- 2 dad speaks english and chinese with the tourists
▶
- 3 i live in a village next to the nile
▶
- 4 how does rana help the others
▶

Revision On Unit (5)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

electrician – mail carrier – bus driver – garbage collector – mechanic

A ① takes away all the trash, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A ② delivers our parcels. But you also need help when you leave the house. You need a ③ to fix the car or a ④ to take you to school.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plugs – socket – electrical – electricity – dry

Electricity is very important in our lives. It's also very dangerous. We should use ① safely. So, never touch anything ② with wet hands. Always make sure your hands are ③ before you touch anything electrical. Never put anything into a ④, only use plugs.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mail carrier – job – list – weather – exercise

Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the ① is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of ② They also speak to a lot of people. This is a nice part of the ③ Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the ④

4 Choose the correct answer:

① The (doctor - teacher - vet - dentist) looks after our teeth.

② A (garbage collector - mail carrier - bus driver - plumber) takes away the

trash.

- 3 The (architect - mathematician - dentist - doctor) works with numbers and math problems.
- 4 The (mechanic - plumber - farmer - electrician) should know how to work safely with electricity.
- 5 We shouldn't (save - waste - control - keep) electricity.
- 6 The (bus driver - mail carrier - garbage collector - mechanic) drives to many different places and helps lots of people.
- 7 When you leave a room, turn (on - of - off - down) the lights.
- 8 A (garbage collector - plumber - bus driver - mail carrier) carries the letters and parcels to us.
- 9 In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of (lightning - fire - electricity - storm).
- 10 You need a (builder - plumber - mechanic - bus driver) to fix the car or the bus.
- 11 If you're not watching TV, (turn on - switch on - plug - unplug) it.
- 12 A (mechanic - mathematician - electrician - plumber) fixes pipes and faucets.
- 13 Never put anything into a (wire - desk - bag - socket), only use plugs.
- 14 If we get an electric (shock - socket - plug - wire), we can't control our bodies.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 (These) is the socket the electrician is fixing.
- 2 (That) are the mail carrier's parcels.
- 3 (Those) is the water dripping from the faucet.
- 4 (This) are the plumber's tools.

- 5 These (be) the faucets in our bathrooms.
- 6 That (be) the mechanic who fixed my car.
- 7 This (be) the garbage collector who collects our trash.
- 8 Those (be) the plumbers who came to our house.

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 lara, talia and amir are cousins
▶
- 2 what s dalia doing now
▶
- 3 my aunt is a mail carrier in the united states
▶
- 4 who does tamer call when his fan doesn't work
▶

Revision On Unit (6)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy – education – job – history – tourism

I'm a guide. I work in the ① industry. People come to my country, and it's my ② to explain the ③ and tell the tourists lots of interesting stories. I'm a teacher. I work in the ④ industry. I work hard to help my students.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oil – non-renewable – renewable – electricity – sources

We are using more and more ① We can make electricity from many different energy ② Today, 80% of electricity comes from ③ sources. These are coal, gas, and ④

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

polite – older – show – poor – respect

When you show ① , you are kind and ② You talk to someone in the same way you want them to talk to you. We show everyone respect. We show respect to younger people. We show respect to ③ people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and ④ people.

4 Choose the correct answer:

① I respect the (bus driver - plumber - teacher - cleaner). I don't throw trash.

② The librarian works in the (farming - transportation - tourism - education) industry.

- 3 The solar energy is (renewable - non-renewable - wind - wave) energy.
- 4 The (librarian - cleaner - plumber - farmer) grows and looks after trees.
- 5 The (solar energy - wave energy - wind energy - fire energy) comes from the sun.
- 6 The fisherman works in the (tourism - farming - fishing - education) industry.
- 7 The guide works in the (education - tourism - transportation - farming) industry.
- 8 The (solar energy - wave energy - moon energy - wind energy) comes from the wind.
- 9 The (farmer - fisherman - teacher - cleaner) catches fish and sells them in the market.
- 10 I'm a (teacher - geologist - guide - principal). I work in the tourism industry.
- 11 The (storm energy - solar energy - wave energy - wind energy) comes from the sea.
- 12 The farmer works in the (energy - fishing - farming - tourism) industry.
- 13 The (principal - teacher - guide - librarian) works in the tourism industry.
- 14 The wind energy is (renewable - non-renewable - solar energy - wave energy).
- 15 The (guide - fishermen - principal - farmer) works in the education industry.
- 16 (Coal - Wave energy - Wind energy - Solar energy) is a non-renewable source of energy.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I'm sad when I (agree) with my dad.
- 2 The boy is (appointed). He didn't pass the test.

3 She (likes) ice cream. She doesn't want it.

4 I'm sorry because I (obeyed) my mom.

5 The rabbit (appeared). I can't see it.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what does the old man sell

▶

2 when tourists arrive in egypt, they need a hotel

▶

3 sara and malak are sisters

▶

Model Answers

Revision on Unit (1)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 farmers 2 county 3 grow 4 raise

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 governorate 2 grow 3 catch 4 governorate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 healthy 2 walk 3 fruits 4 watermelon

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 emperor 2 competition 3 grow 4 seed

5 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | | |
|-----------|--------------|------------|---------|---------------|
| 1 healthy | 2 produce | 3 lunch | 4 catch | 5 competition |
| 6 dinner | 7 nutrients | 8 chickens | 9 fruit | 10 rice |
| 11 honest | 12 breakfast | 13 raise | 14 eggs | |

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|-------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| 1 but | 2 repainted | 3 and | 4 recleaned |
| 5 but | 6 remade | 7 and | 8 redid |

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 My cousin Judy and I play video games on Tuesday.
- 2 Does Talia come from Egypt?
- 3 Do you think you're healthy, Judy?
- 4 The most important man in China was the emperor.

Revision on Unit (2)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 cute 2 dangerous 3 important 4 helpful

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 animals 2 strong 3 desert 4 legs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 stronger 2 scared 3 hungry 4 kind

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 leaves 2 horns 3 coats 4 protect

5 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|---------|---------|-------------|
| 1 helpful | 2 day | 3 huge | 4 claws | 5 dangerous |
| 6 horns | 7 scary | 8 large | 9 beak | 10 wings |
| 11 Crocodiles | 12 desert | | | |

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|------------------|------------------|----------|
| 1 smaller | 2 tall | 3 more dangerous | 4 thinner | 5 heavy |
| 6 more delicious | 7 noisier | 8 fast | 9 more beautiful | 10 nicer |
| 11 long | | | | |

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Mom, Sara and Tarek like animals.
- 2 Which animal does Adel like?
- 3 Alexandria is a beautiful Egyptian city.

Revision on Unit (3)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 germination 2 sunlight 3 soil 4 shoot

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 agricultural 2 lakes 3 water 4 habitat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 Egyptians 2 Papyrus 3 weather 4 river

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 desert 2 roots 3 seed 4 shoot 5 thousand
 6 leaves 7 careful 8 soil 9 agricultural habitat 10 helpful
 11 rivers 12 desert habitat 13 germinates 14 lakes

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 biggest 2 careful 3 the most delicious 4 the nicest
 5 colorful 6 the most beautiful 7 helpful 8 the heaviest

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
 2 Lucas lives on a farm in the United States.
 3 Why does uncle Ali grow plants in the balcony?
 4 Where does Jana live?
 5 They go to the farm in September.

Revision on Unit (4)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 houseboat 2 desert 3 tent 4 cloth

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 village 2 in 3 between 4 behind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 supermarket 2 food 3 fresh 4 kind

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 beach 2 restaurants 3 tourists 4 town

5 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------|------------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 next | 2 city | 3 under | 4 bedroom | 5 between |
| 6 apartment | 7 behind | 8 post office | 9 tent | 10 in front |
| 11 living room | 12 in | 13 house | 14 on | 15 houseboat |
| 16 above | 17 safaris | 18 shopping mall | | |

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 between 2 in 3 next to 4 in front 5 above

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Where are mom and Talia?
- 2 Dad speaks English and Chinese with the tourists.
- 3 I live in a village next to the Nile.
- 4 How does Rana help the others?

Revision on Unit (5)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 garbage collector 2 mail carrier 3 mechanic 4 bus driver

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 electricity 2 electrical 3 dry 4 socket

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 weather 2 exercise 3 job 4 mail carrier

4 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1 dentist | 2 garbage collector | 3 mathematician | 4 electrician |
| 5 waste | 6 bus driver | 7 off | 8 mail carrier |
| 9 lightning | 10 mechanic | 11 unplug | 12 plumber |
| 13 socket | 14 shock | | |

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1 This(That) | 2 Those(These) | 3 That(This) | 4 These (Those) |
| 5 are | 6 is | 7 is | 8 are |

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Lara, Talia and Amir are cousins.
- 2 What's Dalia doing now?
- 3 My aunt is a mail carrier in the United States.
- 4 Who does Tamer call when his fan doesn't work?

Revision on Unit (6)

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 tourism 2 job 3 history 4 education

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 electricity 2 sources 3 non-renewable 4 oil

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1 respect 2 polite 3 older 4 poor

4 Choose the correct answer:

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 cleaner | 2 education | 3 renewable | 4 farmer |
| 5 solar energy | 6 fishing | 7 tourism | 8 wind energy |
| 9 fisherman | 10 guide | 11 wave energy | 12 farming |
| 13 guide | 14 renewable | 15 principal | 16 Coal |

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 disagree 2 disappointed 3 dislikes 4 disobeyed
5 disappeared

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 What does the old man sell?
2 When tourists arrive in Egypt, they need a hotel.
3 Sara and Malak are sisters.

هدية كتاب **Step Ahead** لطلاب الصف الرابع بالإجابات النموذجية

السؤال المُضاف حديثاً طبقاً لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة
وطبقاً زي ما عودناكم، السؤال مغطي كل أجزاء المنهج

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (feels) good.
- 2 Lunch (are) ready.
- 3 I think we (grows) rice in Egypt.
- 4 What meal (is) they having?
- 5 What (does) Egyptian farmers produce?
- 6 Where (be) Mom and Maged today?
- 7 Maged (think) that Egyptian food is yummy.
- 8 Let's (eating) lunch.

Lesson (2)

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Do you think you (be) healthy?
- 2 What healthy things do you (does)?
- 3 I don't eat candy, (and) I eat fruit when I want something sweet.
- 4 I don't drink cola (but) other unhealthy drinks.
- 5 I play basketball (but) I play football in the park.

- 6 Dad is a scientist, (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.
- 7 It's a very interesting place, (and) it's very hot sometimes.
- 8 I eat vegetables (but) I exercise.
- 9 I want to play football, (and) my leg hurts.
- 10 I love playing video games, (and) I only play them on Saturday.

Lesson (3)

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Cheng (live) long ago in China.
- 2 Cheng (were) very good at growing things in the past.
- 3 Cheng was very good at (look) after his garden long ago.
- 4 Cheng was very good (in) growing things.
- 5 Cheng worked very hard but the plant (doesn't) grow.
- 6 You will (being) the next emperor.
- 7 A palace is where an emperor (live).
- 8 In a competition someone tries to (wins).

Lesson (4)

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The farmers can (grows) rice and wheat.
- 2 Fishermen (catches) thousands of fish in the sea.
- 3 Cows and goats (lives) in Damietta governorate.
- 4 Life (be) good in Damietta.
- 5 About one and a half million people (lives) in this part of Egypt.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 (Is) snakes and crocodiles important?
- 2 Spiders (be) very helpful.
- 3 Farmers (likes) spiders.
- 4 Spiders (eats) insects.
- 5 Which animals (does) Mom, Tarek, and Sara not talk about?

Lesson (2)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What (does) you know about camels?
- 2 Camels (helps) people to cross the desert.
- 3 Camels (be) perfect for the desert.
- 4 We can (uses) their fur to make clothes.
- 5 Camels (has) large, flat feet.
- 6 Camels can (lives) a without water for a long time.
- 7 The horse (have) strong legs.
- 8 The horse (eat) grass.
- 9 Horses are faster (the) camels.
- 10 Camels are (heavy) than horses.
- 11 Camels live (long) than horses.
- 12 A mouse is (smallest) than an elephant.
- 13 A snake is (most) dangerous than a fox.

14 I think ice cream is (most) delicious than butter.

15 Crocodiles are more dangerous (then) fish.

Lesson (3)

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The bear is (strong) than the pelican.

2 I'm (big) and stronger than you.

3 You are (kind) than all the other bears!

Lesson (4)

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Rhim gazelles (looks) very beautiful.

2 Rhim gazelles (doesn't) need to drink a lot of water.

3 Rhim gazelles (lives) in the Sahara Desert.

4 Rhim gazelles (has) big ears and long horns.

5 How (old) is a rhim gazelle's horn?

6 How (tall) does a rhim gazelle live?

7 What (does) rhim gazelles eat?

8 Why (be) rhim gazelles special?

Lesson (5)

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The fennec fox (live) in the deserts of North Africa.

2 The fennec fox is (small) than other foxes.

3 The fennec fox (need) big ears.

4 The fennec fox (eat) insects, lizards, and small mice.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Why (does) we grow plants?
- 2 Look! Our tomato plants are (grow) on the balcony.
- 3 Why (be) the tomatoes green?
- 4 How do we (grows) new tomatoes?
- 5 Tomatoes (has) seeds inside.
- 6 Ali (water) the plants every day.
- 7 Let's (having) chicken for lunch.
- 8 What are they (talk) about?

Lesson (2)

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 A habitat is a place where living things (lives).
- 2 Farmers (grows) food for us to eat.
- 3 Plants near rivers and lakes (needs) a lot of water.
- 4 Plants that live in the desert (does) not need a lot of water.
- 5 Where do you (lives)?
- 6 How (tall) does the rose live?
- 7 How (big) is it? - Around 200g.
- 8 The rose is (tall) than the daisy.
- 9 My house is the (big) one in the street.
- 10 My city is the (nice) place to live.
- 11 I have the (heavy) suitcase.

12 What's the (more) beautiful flower?

Lesson (3)

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Forty years ago, the land (be) very dry.
- 2 Life (be) very difficult long ago.
- 3 They (plant) trees and flowers last week.
- 4 They (use) plants to make the land green a year ago.
- 5 Why (do) grandparents plant seeds yesterday?
- 6 Why do you think Lucas (liked) the farm?
- 7 Why (are) it important to turn desert land into farmland?
- 8 Egypt (want) to plant more than 100 million palm trees across the country.

Lesson (4)

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The seed (germinate) and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
- 2 The shoot grows above the soil. It (get) taller.
- 3 After about 4 months, the sunflower (open) and faces the sun.
- 4 Finally, the sunflower (die) and drops its seeds.

Lesson (5)

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What does the plant (needs)?
- 2 Papyrus (need) a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.
- 3 Papyrus (grow) in the Nile Delta near the river.
- 4 Ancient Egyptians (use) papyrus to make paper.
- 5 Ancient Egyptians (make) sandals and baskets from papyrus.

Unit (4)**Lesson (1)****15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 Where (does) you live?
- 2 Where (be) Mom and Talia today?
- 3 Which (are) your favorite room?
- 4 I can (relaxes) and do my homework quietly in my bedroom.
- 5 Can you (helping) me organize the kitchen?

Lesson (2)**16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 My name (be) Zain.
- 2 I (lives) in a house with my family.
- 3 Our house is not the (big) in the village.
- 4 It is (behind) a yellow house and a brown house.
- 5 The tent is (between) to the car?
- 6 The couch is (on) the living room.
- 7 My house is (next to) the tall house and the tree.
- 8 There are 4 chairs and a table (on) the balcony.
- 9 I (buys) food at the supermarket.
- 10 Ahmed (learn) lots of things at school.

Lesson (3)**17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 (Turns) right.

- 2 (Turns) left.
- 3 (Goes) straight ahead.
- 4 It's (in) the corner.
- 5 Excuse me, (when) is the post office?
- 6 Dina is (go) to visit her friend Fareeda.
- 7 I'm so happy you are (come) to my house today.
- 8 My house is (next) the supermarket and the school.
- 9 Sherif (like) the summer very much.
- 10 He (speak) English and Chinese with the tourists.
- 11 The small child (fall) into the river last week.
- 12 Why (be) it important to help others?

Lesson (4)

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Hurghada (be) in the east of Egypt.
- 2 In Hurghada, there (be) lots of interesting things to do.
- 3 Hurghada (have) some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
- 4 How many paragraphs does Mariam (writes)?
- 5 Why does Mariam (uses) bold text?

Lesson (5)

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 This (be) Mona.
- 2 Mona (work) at the supermarket every day.
- 3 Mona (check) the food is fresh.
- 4 She (help) us when we can't find something.
- 5 She (be) kind and happy.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1** Where (do) he work?
- 2** (Does) you like your job?
- 3** Sometimes it (be) wet and messy.
- 4** I (has) to fix pipes and faucets.
- 5** I (want) to be a bus driver when I was young.
- 6** I was much better at (fix) pipes and faucets than cars.
- 7** I love (make) things work!
- 8** I forgot to take (up) the trash!

Lesson (2)

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1** Is it near (and) far?
- 2** That mail carrier is (deliver) letters.
- 3** (This) mechanics work in the repair shop.
- 4** This bus (be) taking me to school.
- 5** (That) drivers are driving the new buses.

- 6 (These) is the socket the electrician is fixing.
- 7 (Those) is the water dripping from the faucet.
- 8 How can we (uses) electricity safely?
- 9 This (be) the socket the electrician is fixing.
- 10 Those (be) the mail carrier's parcels.
- 11 That (be) the water dripping from the faucet.
- 12 These (be) the plumber's tools.

Lesson (3)

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Lara, Talia and Amir (be) cousins.
- 2 When Lara (be) a child, she loved to experiment.
- 3 When Talia was a baby, she (plays) with blocks.
- 4 When she was older, she (starting) making things.
- 5 Amir (is) always very patient and he liked helping people.
- 6 Big brothers can (got) angry at their little brothers.
- 7 Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir (be) all adults.
- 8 Lara (be) an electrician.
- 9 Amir is (an) teacher.
- 10 What (do) you like to play when you were little?

Lesson (4)**23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 My name (be) Sherifa.
- 2 We (be) talking about the good and bad things about different jobs today.
- 3 My aunt (be) a mail carrier in America.
- 4 I (talk) to her about her job and she told me some of the pros and cons.
- 5 Mail carriers (be) outside all day.
- 6 Mail carriers (walks) all day.
- 7 Everyone likes (meet) the mail carrier.
- 8 My aunt (start) work at 6 o'clock in the morning.

Lesson (5)**24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

- 1 This is a report about people who (helps) us.
- 2 Plumbers (connects) the pipes so that we have water.
- 3 Cleaners keep the school (cleans).
- 4 The mechanic (fix) the cars.
- 5 Garbage collectors (takes) away our garbage.
- 6 The bus driver (bring) the children to school.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What do you (did) on Friday?
- 2 I (be) a fisherman.
- 3 I (woke) up very early every day.
- 4 I go out on my boat and (catches) fish?
- 5 A farmer (grow) oranges.
- 6 A farmer (look) after the trees and gives them water and nutrients.
- 7 A guide (working) in the tourism industry.
- 8 The librarian..... (to work) in a school library.
- 9 I (helps) children find the information they need.
- 10 I (sold) my fish in the market every day.

Lesson (2)

26 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Sara and Malak (be) sisters?
- 2 The children (play) in the park yesterday.
- 3 Let's (cutting) down my tree.
- 4 I can (sells) the wood.
- 5 She cut the tree and she..... (sells) the wood.
- 6 (Doesn't) worry.
- 7 We (makes) electricity from energy sources.
- 8 This mango seed will (growing) into a big tree.

Lesson (3)

27 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 On day, an old fisherman (be) in front of my house.
- 2 He couldn't (starts) his van.
- 3 I can (fixing) this problem.
- 4 What does the old man (selling)?
- 5 How many fish does the old man (gives) to mom?
- 6 You can (has) fun in the sun.
- 7 He (selling) fresh fish from the river every day.

Lesson (4)

28 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 What do you want to (doing)?
- 2 I (wants) to be a teacher.
- 3 For a teacher, every day (be) different.
- 4 Students always (asks) surprising questions.
- 5 Teachers (needs) to be very patient.
- 6 A good teacher is always ready to (learning).
- 7 Everyone in the class (knowing) different things.
- 8 Why does the writer (wanted) to be a teacher?

Lesson (5)

29 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 How do we (shows) respect to the people around us?
- 2 I respect the cleaner. I (doesn't) throw trash.
- 3 I respect the teacher. I (listening) to him carefully.
- 4 Ali says thank you when he (get) off the bus.
- 5 Heba respects the librarian. She (put) her books back on the shelf.

Model Answers

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|--------|-------|----------|-------|
| 1 feel | 2 is | 3 grow | 4 are |
| 5 do | 6 are | 7 thinks | 8 eat |

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|-------|-------|
| 1 are | 2 do | 3 but | 4 and |
| 5 and | 6 and | 7 but | 8 and |
| 9 but | 10 but | | |

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1 lived | 2 was | 3 looking | 4 at |
| 5 didn't | 6 be | 7 lives | 8 win |

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|------|--------|
| 1 grow | 2 catch | 3 live | 4 is | 5 live |
|--------|---------|--------|------|--------|

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|-------|------|
| 1 Are | 2 Are | 3 like | 4 eat | 5 do |
|-------|-------|--------|-------|------|

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|---------|---------|------------|
| 1 do | 2 help | 3 are | 4 use | 5 have |
| 6 live | 7 has | 8 eats | 9 than | 10 heavier |
| 11 longer | 12 smaller | 13 more | 14 more | 15 than |

7 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | |
|------------|----------|----------|
| 1 stronger | 2 bigger | 3 kinder |
|------------|----------|----------|

8 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 look | 2 don't | 3 live | 4 have |
| 5 long | 6 long | 7 do | 8 are |

9 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 lives | 2 smaller | 3 needs | 4 eats |
|----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|

10 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 do | 2 growing | 3 are | 4 grow |
| 5 have | 6 waters | 7 have | 8 talking |

11 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 live | 2 grow | 3 need | 4 do | 5 live |
| 6 long | 7 heavy | 8 taller | 9 biggest | 10 nicest |
| 11 heaviest | 12 most | | | |

12 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1 was | 2 was | 3 planted | 4 used |
| 5 did | 6 like | 7 is | 8 wants |

13 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 germinates | 2 gets | 3 opens | 4 dies |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|

14 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 need | 2 needs | 3 grows | 4 used | 5 made |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|

15 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 do 2 are 3 is 4 relax 5 help

16 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 is 2 live 3 biggest 4 between 5 next
6 in 7 between 8 in 9 buy 10 learns

17 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Turn 2 Turn 3 Go 4 on 5 where
6 going 7 coming 8 between 9 likes 10 speaks
11 fell 12 is

18 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 is 2 are 3 has 4 write 5 use

19 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 is 2 works 3 checks 4 helps 5 is

20 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 does 2 do 3 is 4 have
5 wanted 6 fixing 7 making 8 out

21 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 or 2 delivers 3 These 4 is 5 Those
6 This 7 That 8 use 9 is 10 are
11 is 12 are

22 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 are 2 was 3 played 4 started 5 was

Model Answers

6 get 7 are 8 is 9 a 10 did

23 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 is 2 are 3 is 4 talked
5 are 6 walk 7 meeting 8 starts

24 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 help 2 connect 3 clean 4 fixes 5 take
6 brings

25 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 am 3 wake 4 catch 5 grows
6 looks 7 works 8 works 9 help 10 sell

26 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 are 2 played 3 cut 4 sell
5 sold 6 Don't 7 make 8 grow

27 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 was 2 start 3 fix 4 sell
5 give 6 have 7 sells

28 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 do 2 want 3 is 4 ask
5 need 6 learn 7 knows 8 want

29 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 show 2 don't 3 listen 4 gets 5 puts

حمل الآن

مجاناً وحصرياً

المراجعة رقم (3)

الترم الاول





First term Questions Bank



Question 01

Listen and circle the correct answer

1

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - They go walking in the.....
(farm - street - park - desert).
2 - Yesser loves
(pizza - pasta - cola - burgers).
3 - Yesser's dad is a.....
(teacher - farmer - doctor - scientist).
4 - They go walking every.....
(day - weekend - month - night).

2

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - Lara works at the near her house.
(supermarket – bank – hospital – school)
2 - My family and I see her every.....
(month – week – day – year)
3 – Lara checks that the food is.....
(fresh – healthy – unhealthy – bad)
4 – Lara is very kind and
(lazy – helpful – clever - careful

3

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - Horses have large and beautiful
(legs – ears – eyes- hands)
2 - They are than camels.
(faster – slower- bigger - smaller)
3 - They have teeth .
(weak – strong – big – small)
4 - They eat grass and drink fresh.....
(milk -juice – rain – water)



4

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - I want to be a.....
(mail carrier – teacher – vet – doctor)
- 2 - Mail carriers work.....all day.
(indoors – abroad – inside – outside)
- 3 - They get a lot of
(food – exercise – fats – money)
- 4 - They also many people.
(talk – hate – meet – love)

5

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 are amazing .
(Monkeys – Camels – Foxes – Cows)
- 2 - They are beautiful,animals
(heavy – long – weak – strong)
- 3 – their is delicious.
(milk – water – juice – soup)
- 4 - We can use their.....to make clothes.
(fats – claws – milk – fur)

6

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1- Damietta is a.....
(mountain - governorate - country - village).
- 2 - Damietta's land is rich in
(nutrients - sweets - cheese - sugar).
- 3 - Farmers vegetables and fruits.
(grow - feed - eat - raise)
- 4 Fishermen fish in the sea.
(grow - catch - chase - raise)

7

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - I live in an apartment with my.....
(friends – teachers – family – classmates)
- 2 - I can relax and do my homework in my
(living room – bedroom – kitchen – balcony)
- 3 - I can see the whole street from the
(kitchen – bedroom - balcony– bathroom)
- 4 - I watch TV in the.....
(balcony – kitchen – bedroom - living room)



Question 02

choose the correct answer

- 1 Our house is so old . we need to it .
 (a) Repaint (b) Recook (c) Reread (d) Rewrite
- 2 We useto make sugar .
 (a) onions (b) Watermelon (c) Sugarcane (d) grapes
- 3 A mail carrier Your letters .
 (a) connects (b) throws (c) delivers (d) puts
- 4 The can fly high in the sky .
 (a) bear (b) pelican (c) dog (d) cat
- 5 She always a pencil when she was little.
 (a) carry (b) carrying (c) carried (d) to carry
- 6 How is a horse? - It is about 459 kg.
 (a) long (b) heavy (c) happy (d) short
- 7 I like chicken I don't like chips .
 (a) but (b) and (c) so (d) because
- 8 The always carries a screwdriver when he works .
 (a) doctor (b) electrician (c) teacher (d) dentist
- 9 The yellow flower is than the red flower .
 (a) more beautiful (b) beautiful less (c) beautiful (d) tall
- 10 Elephants arethan dogs.
 (a) thinner (b) big (c) bigger (d) biggest
- 11 Camels have large, flatso they can walk on the sand.
 (a) hands (b) feet (c) legs (d) teeth
- 12 She.....ice cream.
 (a) don't like (b) dislikes (c) like to (d) like
- 13 Never put anything into a only use plugs.
 (a) tape (b) box (c) bin (d) socket
- 14 The roots grow the soil.
 (a) next to (b) on (c) under (d) above



- 15 Tomatoes are before they are red.
 (a) pink (b) green (c) blue (d) black
- 16 I sit Lara and seif
 (a) in (b) above (c) between (d) on
- 17 Domiati is very famous .
 (a) milk (b) cheese (c) guava (d) banana
- 18catch fish in the sea .
 (a) farmers (b) Fishermen (c) doctors (d) Teachers
- 19 She loved to experiment , she was very
 (a) sad (b) Angry (c) curious (d) lazy
- 20 This my car
 (a) is (b) are (c) were (d) do
- 21 Wethe plant every day.
 (a) water (b) read (c) look (d) play
- 22 There is a cat in of the tree
 (a) behind (b) next (c) front (d) between
- 23 A / An Helps me in the library .
 (a) Vet (b) engineer (c) librarian (d) guide
- 24 Birds have one.....
 (a) wing (b) feather (c) beak (d) tooth
- 25 My grandpa taught me all.....cars
 (a) of (b) around (c) off (d) about
- 26 I like playing tennis, I can't play well.
 (a) and (b) from (c) but (d) so
- 27 I explain the history to the tourists , I work in the Industry .
 (a) education (b) fishing (c) farming (d) tourism
- 28 They live in a they enjoy the fresh air of the country .
 (a) city (b) town (c) village (d) lake
- 29 The Egyptian land is in nutrients.
 (a) poor (b) rich (c) bad (d) weak
- 30 I like grapes..... bananas
 (a) but (b) or (c) and (d) so



- 31 I respect the I don't throw trash .
 (a) bus driver (b) Librarian (c) cleaner (d) teacher
- 32 A lot of visit Hurghada .
 (a) tourists (b) thieves (c) clubs (d) computers
- 33 These my father's tools . He uses to fix things .
 (a) are (b) is (c) am (d) was
- 34 If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an.....
 (a) electrician (b) mail carrier (c) bus driver (d) plumber
- 35 There is not much rain in the
 (a) agricultural habitat (b) desert habitat (c) rivers (d) lakes
- 36 This is near my house . It sells good food .
 (a) post office (b) living room (c) supermarket (d) balcony
- 37 The electricians connect.....so that we can use lights.
 (a) bus (b) bag (c) garbage (d) electricity
- 38 A mail carrier delivers.....
 (a) parcels (b) cars (c) trash (d) faucets
- 39 are very dangerous animals.
 (a) Crocodiles (b) Cats (c) Pelicans (d) Birds
- 40 I eat vegetables exercise.
 (a) so (b) and (c) or (d) but
- 41 We chickens in Egypt.
 (a) produce (b) raise (c) grow (d) plant
- 42 I found..... cat in the park..
 (a) those (b) this (c) these (d) they
- 43 There's a plant The couch .
 (a) in (b) next to (c) between (d) in front
- 44 Plants near need a lot of water .
 (a) desert (b) farms (c) lakes (d) mountains
- 45 The park is The supermarket . I can't see it well .
 (a) next (b) behind (c) between (d) in front
- 46 I want a mechanic .
 (a) are (b) to be (c) being (d) is



- 47 We sometimes see a flash of.....in a storm.
 (a) electricity (b) shock (c) lightning (d) water
- 48 Tourists usually go on when they are in the Sahara desert .
 (a) visits (b) tents (c) safaris (d) games
- 49 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt the Red Sea .
 (a) in (b) at (c) on (d) to
- 50 The red box is the two rooms
 (a) on (b) between (c) in front (d) next
- 51 When dad.....young, he wanted to be a doctor.
 (a) am (b) is (c) was (d) were
- 52 There is a plant the sofa
 (a) next (b) behind (c) front (d) between
- 53 Plants need and water to grow.
 (a) sunlight (b) leaves (c) fruit (d) books
- 54 You can ride in the desert .
 (a) lions (b) dogs (c) camels (d) chickens
- 55 Never touch anything electrical with.....hands.
 (a) wet (b) dry (c) clever (d) open
- 56 The..... helps us to cross the desert .
 (a) eagle (b) bear (c) camel (d) cat
- 57 Snakes are
 (a) birds (b) dangerous (c) plants (d) birds
- 58 The giraffe is..... than the camel .
 (a) tall (b) taller (c) tallest (d) the tallest
- 59 I like reading ,..... I don't like drawing .
 (a) but (b) and (c) or (d) so
- 60 flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
 (a) They (b) That (c) Those (d) These
- 61 Egyptian farmers raise
 (a) giraffes (b) chickens (c) elephants (d) lions



- 62 I like reading,I don't like drawing.
 (a) but (b) and (c) or (d) so
- 63 Camels are than horses. They are about 2.0 m.
 (a) slower (b) faster (c) taller (d) tall
- 64 I have pencils than my sister .
 (a) few (b) fewer (c) the fewest (d) two
- 65 are my friends.
 (a) This (b) Those (c) That (d) Them
- 66 I don't drink cola I exercise every day.
 (a) for (b) so (c) but (d) where
- 67 grow vegetables for us to eat.
 (a) Engineers (b) Farmers (c) Doctors (d) Teachers
- 68 have large beautiful eyes
 (a) Horses (b) Plants (c) Flowers (d) Potatoes
- 69 A snake isdangerous than a fox.
 (a) more (b) most (c) least (d) the
- 70 Rhim gazelles have big ears and long
 (a) coats (b) horns (c) hooves (d) fingers
- 71 We use camels' fur to make
 (a) clothes (b) milk (c) food (d) butter
- 72 My grandfather grows vegetables and fruit in his farm. He's a/an.....
 (a) farmer (b) engineer (c) teacher (d) architect
- 73 What.....you like to play with when you were little?
 (a) did (b) do (c) does (d) doing
- 74 The..... land animal is the giraffe.
 (a) tallest (b) taller (c) tall (d) smaller
- 75 I wash my face in the
 (a) balcony (b) bedroom (c) bathroom (d) bedroom
- 76are green.
 (a) Leaves (b) Roots (c) Soil (d) Seeds
- 77 What is the animal in the world?
 (a) big (b) bigger (c) biggest (d) small



- 78 We use the of camels to make clothes
 (a) meat (b) milk (c) fur (d) tooth
- 79 To mix something again means to
 (a) not mix (b) mix (c) remix (d) no mix
- 80 A: What do farmers raise in Egypt? -....., cows and ducks.
 (a) Chickens (b) Rice (c) Potatoes (d) milk
- 81 A cat is small, a horse is big.
 (a) on (b) so (c) but (d) and
- 82 Did you.....a house for your sister's doll?
 (a) made (b) make (c) making (d) makes
- 83 The is made of cloth
 (a) house (b) cave (c) tent (d) apartment
- 84 There are tall trees in of the house .
 (a) front (b) next (c) under (d) on
- 85 We our garden plants every week.
 (a) water (b) drink (c) paint (d) play
- 86 he visit his grandmother last night?
 (a) Did (b) Are (c) Does (d) Is
- 87 There are four chairs and a table the balcony .
 (a) next (b) inside (c) to (d) to
- 88 Those builders building the new hospital
 (a) are (b) does (c) do (d) is
- 89 A.....works in the tourism industry.
 (a) librarian (b) guide (c) fisherman (d) teacher
- 90 She loved to experiment. She was very.....
 (a) sad (b) angry (c) curious (d) lazy
- 91 A..... fixes cars.
 (a) fisherman (b) mechanic (c) farmer (d) plumber
- 92 We eat breakfast in the
 (a) evening (b) morning (c) afternoon (d) night
- 93 Egypt is a big
 (a) governorate (b) country (c) city (d) village



- 94 She carried a..... to open old radios.
 (a) socket (b) screwdriver (c) tape measure (d) pencil
- 95 The grow under the soil .
 (a) roots (b) leaves (c) flowers (d) seeds
- 96 We sleep in the
 (a) bedroom (b) kitchen (c) dining room (d) living room
- 97 Camels..... perfect for the desert.
 (a) is (b) was (c) are (d) am
- 98 I like guavas watermelon .
 (a) so (b) but (c) and (d) because
- 99 Chickens give us
 (a) eggs (b) milk (c) grass (d) pasta
- 100 The fennec fox is other foxes .
 (a) smaller (b) small (c) smaller than (d) smallest
- 101 The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the.....
 (a) music (b) engine (c) faucet (d) pipe
- 102 My book is the table. I can't see it .
 (a) next (b) in front of (c) behind (d) between
- 103 Sunflowers face the
 (a) stars (b) sun (c) moon (d) seed
- 104 apples are on the tree . I can't get them
 (a) Those (b) These (c) That (d) This
- 105 When Talia..... a baby, she played with blocks.
 (a) were (b) is (c) was (d) are
- 106 apples are on the tree .
 (a) Those (b) This (c) That (d) They
- 107 We use the..... to grow new plants .
 (a) flowers (b) seeds (c) leaves (d) roots
- 108 The in Hurghada are beautiful . We can swim and play there .
 (a) schools (b) offices (c) beaches (d) Hospitals
- 109 He didn't.....angry with his little brothers.
 (a) got (b) get (c) gets (d) getting



- 110 The fennec fox lives in the
 (a) desert (b) sea (c) sky (d) park
- 111 The old fisherman.....lovely fresh fish.
 (a) drew (b) caught (c) threw (d) wrote
- 112 We produce vegetables like and potatoes
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) watermelon (d) apples
- 113 Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is
 (a) healthy (b) unhealthy (c) scary (d) sad
- 114 Horses are
 (a) birds (b) animals (c) plants (d) food
- 115 We havein the morning.
 (a) lunch (b) dinner (c) breakfast (d) night
- 116 We.....lots of vegetables in Egypt .
 (a) produce (b) raise (c) keep (d) play
- 117 The fennec fox has a thick..... to keep warm.
 (a) fur (b) beak (c) feather (d) eye
- 118 Our house is very old. We want to It.
 (a) repaint (b) redo (c) reread (d) reuse
- 119 Farmers grow and onions.
 (a) toys (b) computers (c) tomatoes (d) books
- 120 Birds have a to eat with .
 (a) fur (b) wings (c) beak (d) feathers
- 121 Where is the hospital ? – It's The corner .
 (a) on (b) at (c) in (d) to
- 122 The..... is a small plant .
 (a) soil (b) flower (c) shoot (d) root
- 123 bird is so near . I can see it well
 (a) that (b) This (c) those (d) these
- 124 have seeds inside.
 (a) Tomatoes (b) Eyes (c) Ears (d) Animals
- 125 I play computer games in the It's very comfortable there .
 (a) cave (b) living room (c) rock (d) bathroom
- 126 The Is near my house . I can send letters and packages easily
 (a) shopping mall (b) post office (c) school (d) hospital



- 127 We can cook delicious food in our It's very big .
 (a) bathroom (b) living room (c) kitchen (d) bedroom
- 128 My uncle lives on a He can see water everywhere.
 (a) cave (b) tent (c) houseboat (d) house
- 129 Farmers work in the.....
 (a) desert habitat (b) rivers (c) agricultural habitat (d) lakes
- 130 The plant roots grow The soil . We can't see them well .
 (a) under (b) above (c) in front of (d) Next to
- 131 How is a horse ? - it is about 459 kg .
 (a) happy (b) heavy (c) long (d) tall
- 132 The hospital is to the school . I can get to it quickly .
 (a) front (b) between (c) next (d) on
- 133 The rose is the flower
 (a) nicer (b) more beautiful (c) most beautiful (d) bigger
- 134 The roots grow the soil.
 (a) next to (b) on (c) under (d)
- 135 How is a camel? - It is about 1.9 m tall.
 (a) old (b) heavy (c) tall (d) fast
- 136 is Minya ? - it's in the south of Egypt .
 (a) When (b) How (c) Where (d) Who
- 137 lives there ? - about 1.5 ,million Egyptians live in Damietta .
 (a) When (b) How (c) who (d) Why
- 138 Theis in the rock.
 (a) house (b) cave (c) tent (d) apartment
- 139 Go ahead and turn right . The supermarket is on the corner
 (a) left (b) straight (c) up (d) right
- 140 bus is taking me to school .
 (a) these (b) This (c) those (d) They
- 141 These children watching tv .
 (a) am (b) is (c) are (d) was



- 142 Plants that live in the.....do not need a lot of water .
 (a) river (b) desert (c) farm (d) lake
- 143 Can you help me the kitchen ?
 (a) take (b) give (c) organize (d) play

Question 03

Read and complete the text with the words in the box

1

(germination- grows - above – under)

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant That is called We water the plant every day, and the roots grow the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

2

(were – color – repainted – small)

My house is old . I wanted to make it beautiful I it . The new Was green and red my friend helped me . We very happy .

3

(explained - helping - taller – angry)

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes people. Sometimes, big brothers can get at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and things all the time.

4

(teacher - next - kind – town)

I live in a small My school is to a big park . My father is a He is a very He teaches English . Students like him very much .

5

(sell - summer - down - meet – parents)

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My work in tourist boats so I go with them . we travel up and the Nile . I like the very much. I see many interesting places and I people from all over the world.



6

(juice- lunch – chicken- delicious – fruits)

I'm hungry. I want to have my I like to have and rice. The food is I love too. I want to have watermelon and drink some

7

(germination – flowers – red – yellow)

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony ! They have leaves and tomatoes are green before they are We plant a seed and the plant grows . that is called

8

(house - in - Between - front)

My name is Sif . I live in a village next to the Nile . I live in a with my family . Our house is a pink house and a yellow house . There are tall trees in of the house .

9

(beak – paw – hungry – thirsty)

A pelican and a bear are in the river . they are very They are both looking at a big juicy fish . the bear reaches for the fish . It lifts its the pelican opens its it is ready to take the fish out of the water .

10

(catch – live – goats – grow)

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients .The farmers can rice , tomatoes , wheat and grapes . Fishermen thousands of fish in the sea , cows , and sheep live in Damietta governorate . Domiati cheese is very famous .

11

(green-billion- rainwater – life)

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many fruits. They used to water the plants. They needed about a litres of water a year.They used plants to make the land



12

(streets - collector - builder - deliver)

we need all jobs . All the local homes and businessmen need a mail carrier to The packages and letters . We all need the garbage To take away the garbage and keep the clean .

13

(school - balcony - between - friends – hospital)

We live in a big house near the sea . We have a big We put flowers in it . Our house is The post office and the I walk to my Every day . It is wonderful . I meet my And play together .

Question 04

Read the text and answer the questions

1

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the passage is about.....
(cutting trees - keeping animals - growing mangoes - playing under trees)
2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of.....
(vegetables – rice – fruit – dessert)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees?
4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do?

2

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers can change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.



A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The text is about the (doctor's - teacher's - engineer's) job.
- 2 Teachers need to be very (nervous- patient - unkind).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do students ask?
- 4 Who can change the students' lives?

3

Damietta is a big Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers there grow many foods such as rice, wheat, tomatoes, potatoes, lemons, grapes and guavas. They raise farm animals such as goats, cows and sheep, too. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live there. Life in Damietta is good.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 (Damietta governorate – Domiati cheese – Fishermen) is the best title for the passage.
- 2 The life in Damietta is (bad – good – sad).

Answer the following question :

- 1- What do farmers in Damietta governorate grow?

4

There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, the garbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the text is about
(electricity – jobs – water – children)
- 2 – A..... helps you keep your street clean.
(farmer – teacher - garbage collector – plumber)

B-Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us?

.....

4. Who drives you to school?

.....



5

Sarah's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to land.

A-Choose the correct answer:

- 1-Sarah's grandparents decided to buy
(a new house- some land-some trees-some flowers).
- 2-They lived in..... (the village-the city-the farm-the land).

B-Answer the following questions:

- 3-What did Sarah's grandparents plant?
- 4-How did they water the seeds?

6

My name is Hani. I live in a big house. It has two bedrooms, a big living room, a dining room, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is my favourite room. I sleep and do my homework in it. I love sitting in the balcony, too. We grow plants and flowers there.

A) Choose the correct answers:

- 1 - Hani lives in a (apartment – house – house boat – cave)
- 2 - Hani's favourite room is the (dinig room – kitchen – bathroom – bedroom)

B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Where does Hani grow plants and flowers?
- 4- What does Hani do in his bedroom?

7

Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment.has bedrooms .
(two – three – four – five)



2 - Nada can see the street from the

(bedroom – balcony – kitchen – bathroom)

B. Answer the following questions:

3 - What is Nada's favorite room?

.....

4 - Where is the new apartment?

.....

8

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram. The fox loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fox loses ... heat from its ears.

(heat – cold – water – food)

2. The fennec fox is ... smaller than other foxes.

(bigger - smaller – thinner – taller)

3. The fox's thick..... keeps it warm at night.

(beak – feather – wing – fur)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the fennec fox live?

.....

5. What does the fennec fox eat?

.....

9

My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. Abeer works at a

(school – supermarket – hospital – bank)

2 - We see Abeer every

(week – month – day – year)



B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Abeer check?

.....

4. When does Abeer help us?

.....

Question 05

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets

- 1 The bear is stronger (that) the pelican.
- 2 Ancient Egyptians (make) paper from papyrus.
- 3 The school is [between] the corner.
- 4 The shopping mall is (of) the supermarket and the bank .
- 5 I eat vegetables (but) I exercise.
- 6 The girl is [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.
- 7 I drink cola, (and) I want to drink more water.
- 8 The rose is the [more] beautiful flower .
- 9 He is a (care) driver.
- 10 Crocodiles and snakes are the [more] dangerous animals.
- 11 The plane is [fastest] than the train.
- 12 The hospital is (next) of the school.
- 13 My house is (next to) the tall house and the tree.
- 14 The turtle is [than) slowest animal .
- 15 This sunflower lives the (long) .
- 16 Let's (eating) lunch.
- 17 Adel is [most) intelligent than Wael.
- 18 The couch is (on) the living room.
- 19 How (tall) is the fennec fox? - It's one kg.
- 20 My city is (nicer) place to live.
- 21 This car [are] very expensive.
- 22 My cat is the (big) on our street.
- 23 Which animal is the (scary)?
- 24 The chef (made) rice. This means he made it again.



- 25 The cat [appeared]. I can't see it.
- 26 He (painted) his house. This means he painted it again.
- 27 The fennec fox is (small) than other foxes.
- 28 The snake is the (scary) animal .
- 29 There is a tree (under) to my house.
- 30 She always cares for her children. She's very [care].
- 31 Hurghada (be) in the east of Egypt.
- 32 Crocodiles are [more] dangerous animals.
- 33 Chocolate is (most) delicious than candies.
- 34 (That) are my shoes.
- 35 (What) tall is the horse? - 1.8 m.
- 36 Nada is a very [beauty) girl.
- 37 Elephants are the [bigger) animals.
- 38 The sunflower is [that] tallest flower.
- 39 What do you [wanted] to be?
- 40 He wants to [being] an engineer.
- 41 Rhim Gazelles have (bigger) ears and long horns .
- 42 The book is (in) the shelf.
- 43 Tomatoes (has) seeds inside.
- 44 These children (is) watching TV.
- 45 These keys [is] made of metal.
- 46 Dogs are [thin] than elephants .
- 47 I think maize is (delicious) of these three plants.
- 48 My house is (next) the tall house and the tree.
- 49 I play basketball (but) I play football in the park.
- 50 Those [is] my Pencils .
- 51 I want to go swimming, [so] my leg hurts.
- 52 This cat is the (nice) in our street.
- 53 How (heavier) is the horse ? - It's 390 H
- 54 After school, I do my homework [but] I eat dinner.
- 55 Which animal is the [scarier]?
- 56 He speaks English, [and] he can't speak Chinese.
- 57 I play basketball (but) I play football in the park.



- 58 The kitchen is (in front) to the living room.
- 59 Look! A plane is flying (on) our house.
- 60 This [are] my car.
- 61 I don't eat candy, (and) I like fruit.
- 62 Shaimaa (did) her homework. This means she did it again.

Question 06

Punctuate the following

- 1 egyptian farmers produce many things
.....
- 2 we grow cotton in Egypt
.....
- 3 all jobs are important
.....
- 4 sugarcane is a sweet plant
.....
- 5 what does the plant use to make its food
.....
- 6 my friend lives in Cairo
.....
- 7 what job do you want to do
.....
- 8 farmers grow food for us to eat
.....
- 9 i like playing football
.....
- 10 who helps you keep your home clean
.....
- 11 a bird has two wings
.....
- 12 snakes are scary animals
.....
- 13 hurghada is in the east of Egypt
.....



- 14 my name s mahmoud
.....
- 15 where do you live
.....
- 16 she s patient and helpful
.....
- 17 do you like fish
.....
- 18 why is a broken wire dangerous
.....
- 19 I live on a farm
.....
- 20 don't touch a broken wire
.....
- 21 how tall are you
.....
- 22 what do you want to do
.....
- 23 I go to the supermaket with lara
.....
- 24 the bear is a big animal
.....
- 25 my father is a doctor
.....
- 26 what does the heart do
.....
- 27 which animal is scary
.....
- 28 how many people helped you in your home
.....
- 29 is lara an electrician
.....
- what do you want to be
.....



Question 07

write a paragraph of 18 words using the following elements

1

The germination process

(seeds – roots)

.....

.....

2

A garbage collector

(outside – clean)

.....

.....

3

The fennec fox

(desert - lizards)

.....

.....

4

Camels

(Strong - without water)

.....

.....

5

My house

(favorite room – balcony)

.....

.....



6**My town****(supermarkets – shopping mall)**

7**'My favorite job'****(teacher – help)**

8**'Horses'****(strong – grass)**

9**Food in Egypt****(produce – raise)**

10**Being Healthy****(drink water – play basketball)**



11

The life cycle of a sunflower
(plant a seed – faces the sun)

12

Electricity
(dangerous – wet hands)

13

Your favorite room
(living room – watch TV)

14

Different jobs
(electrician – plumber)

تم بحمد الله ،

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم





Listening texts

1

My name is Yasser. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. My dad is a scientist. We go with him every weekend. We sometimes have pizza for lunch there. I love it.

2

Lara works at the supermarket near her house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. She checks that the food is fresh. She helps me when I can't find something. She is very kind and helpful.

3

Horses have large and beautiful eyes. They are faster than camels. They have strong teeth. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live up to 30 years.

4

I want to be a mail carrier. Mail carriers work outside all day and get a lot of exercise. They also meet many people and make new friends.

5

Camels are amazing! They are beautiful, strong animals. Their milk is delicious. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. We can use their fur to make clothes.

6

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.

7

I live in an apartment with my family. I like my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom. I can see the whole street from the balcony. I watch TV in the living room. I love my apartment.





First term Questions Bank



Question 01

Listen and circle the correct answer

1

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - They go walking in the.....
(farm - street - park - **desert**).
- 2 - Yesser loves
(**pizza** - pasta - cola - burgers).
- 3 - Yesser's dad is a.....
(teacher - farmer - doctor - **scientist**).
- 4 - They go walking every.....
(day - **weekend** - month - night).

2

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - Lara works at the near her house.
(**supermarket** – bank – hospital – school)
- 2 - My family and I see her every.....
(month – **week** – day – year)
- 3 – Lara checks that the food is.....
(**fresh** – healthy – unhealthy – bad)
- 4 – Lara is very kind and
(lazy – **helpful** – clever - careful

3

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - Horses have large and beautiful
(legs – ears – **eyes**- hands)
- 2 - They are than camels.
(**faster** – slower- bigger - smaller)
- 3 - They have teeth .
(weak – **strong** – big – small)
- 4 - They eat grass and drink fresh.....
(milk -juice – rain – **water**)



4

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - I want to be a.....
(**mail carrier** – teacher – vet – doctor)
- 2 - Mail carriers work.....all day.
(indoors – abroad – inside – **outside**)
- 3 - They get a lot of
(food – **exercise** – fats – money)
- 4 - They also many people.
(talk – hate – **meet** – love)

5

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 are amazing .
(Monkeys – **Camels** – Foxes – Cows)
- 2 - They are beautiful,animals
(heavy – long – weak – **strong**)
- 3 – their is delicious.
(**milk** – water – juice – soup)
- 4 - We can use their.....to make clothes.
(fats – claws – milk – **fur**)

6

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1- Damietta is a.....
(mountain - **governorate** - country - village).
- 2 - Damietta's land is rich in
(**nutrients** - sweets - cheese - sugar).
- 3 - Farmers vegetables and fruits.
(**grow** - feed - eat - raise)
- 4 Fishermen fish in the sea.
(grow - **catch** - chase - raise)

7

Listen and circle the correct answer :

- 1 - I live in an apartment with my.....
(friends – teachers – **family** – classmates)
- 2 - I can relax and do my homework in my
(living room – **bedroom** – kitchen – balcony)
- 3 - I can see the whole street from the
(kitchen – bedroom - **balcony**– bathroom)
- 4 - I watch TV in the.....
(balcony – kitchen – bedroom - **living room**)



Question 02

choose the correct answer

- 1 Our house is so old . we need to it .
 (a) Repaint (b) Recook (c) Reread (d) Rewrite
- 2 We useto make sugar .
 (a) onions (b) Watermelon (c) Sugarcane (d) grapes
- 3 A mail carrier Your letters .
 (a) connects (b) throws (c) delivers (d) puts
- 4 The can fly high in the sky .
 (a) bear (b) pelican (c) dog (d) cat
- 5 She always a pencil when she was little.
 (a) carry (b) carrying (c) carried (d) to carry
- 6 How is a horse? - It is about 459 kg.
 (a) long (b) heavy (c) happy (d) short
- 7 I like chicken I don't like chips .
 (a) but (b) and (c) so (d) because
- 8 The always carries a screwdriver when he works .
 (a) doctor (b) electrician (c) teacher (d) dentist
- 9 The yellow flower is than the red flower .
 (a) more beautiful (b) beautiful less (c) beautiful (d) tall
- 10 Elephants arethan dogs.
 (a) thinner (b) big (c) bigger (d) biggest
- 11 Camels have large, flatso they can walk on the sand.
 (a) hands (b) feet (c) legs (d) teeth
- 12 She.....ice cream.
 (a) don't like (b) dislikes (c) like to (d) like
- 13 Never put anything into a only use plugs.
 (a) tape (b) box (c) bin (d) socket
- 14 The roots grow the soil.
 (a) next to (b) on (c) under (d) above



- 15 Tomatoes are before they are red.
 (a) pink (b) green (c) blue (d) black
- 16 I sit Lara and seif
 (a) in (b) above (c) between (d) on
- 17 Domiati is very famous .
 (a) milk (b) cheese (c) guava (d) banana
- 18catch fish in the sea .
 (a) farmers (b) Fishermen (c) doctors (d) Teachers
- 19 She loved to experiment , she was very
 (a) sad (b) Angry (c) curious (d) lazy
- 20 This my car
 (a) is (b) are (c) were (d) do
- 21 Wethe plant every day.
 (a) water (b) read (c) look (d) play
- 22 There is a cat in of the tree
 (a) behind (b) next (c) front (d) between
- 23 A / An Helps me in the library .
 (a) Vet (b) engineer (c) librarian (d) guide
- 24 Birds have one.....
 (a) wing (b) feather (c) beak (d) tooth
- 25 My grandpa taught me all.....cars
 (a) of (b) around (c) off (d) about
- 26 I like playing tennis, I can't play well.
 (a) and (b) from (c) but (d) so
- 27 I explain the history to the tourists , I work in the Industry .
 (a) education (b) fishing (c) farming (d) tourism
- 28 They live in a they enjoy the fresh air of the country .
 (a) city (b) town (c) village (d) lake
- 29 The Egyptian land is in nutrients.
 (a) poor (b) rich (c) bad (d) weak
- 30 I like grapes..... bananas
 (a) but (b) or (c) and (d) so



- 31 I respect the I don't throw trash .
 (a) bus driver (b) Librarian (c) cleaner (d) teacher
- 32 A lot of visit Hurghada .
 (a) tourists (b) thieves (c) clubs (d) computers
- 33 These my father's tools . He uses to fix things .
 (a) are (b) is (c) am (d) was
- 34 If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an.....
 (a) electrician (b) mail carrier (c) bus driver (d) plumber
- 35 There is not much rain in the
 (a) agricultural habitat (b) desert habitat (c) rivers (d) lakes
- 36 This is near my house . It sells good food .
 (a) post office (b) living room (c) supermarket (d) balcony
- 37 The electricians connect.....so that we can use lights.
 (a) bus (b) bag (c) garbage (d) electricity
- 38 A mail carrier delivers.....
 (a) parcels (b) cars (c) trash (d) faucets
- 39 are very dangerous animals.
 (a) Crocodiles (b) Cats (c) Pelicans (d) Birds
- 40 I eat vegetables exercise.
 (a) so (b) and (c) or (d) but
- 41 We chickens in Egypt.
 (a) produce (b) raise (c) grow (d) plant
- 42 I found..... cat in the park..
 (a) those (b) this (c) these (d) they
- 43 There's a plant The couch .
 (a) in (b) next to (c) between (d) in front
- 44 Plants near need a lot of water .
 (a) desert (b) farms (c) lakes (d) mountains
- 45 The park is The supermarket . I can't see it well .
 (a) next (b) behind (c) between (d) in front
- 46 I want a mechanic .
 (a) are (b) to be (c) being (d) is



- 47 We sometimes see a flash of.....in a storm.
 (a) electricity (b) shock (c) lightning (d) water
- 48 Tourists usually go on when they are in the Sahara desert .
 (a) visits (b) tents (c) safaris (d) games
- 49 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt the Red Sea .
 (a) in (b) at (c) on (d) to
- 50 The red box is the two rooms
 (a) on (b) between (c) in front (d) next
- 51 When dad.....young, he wanted to be a doctor.
 (a) am (b) is (c) was (d) were
- 52 There is a plant the sofa
 (a) next (b) behind (c) front (d) between
- 53 Plants need and water to grow.
 (a) sunlight (b) leaves (c) fruit (d) books
- 54 You can ride in the desert .
 (a) lions (b) dogs (c) camels (d) chickens
- 55 Never touch anything electrical with.....hands.
 (a) wet (b) dry (c) clever (d) open
- 56 The..... helps us to cross the desert .
 (a) eagle (b) bear (c) camel (d) cat
- 57 Snakes are
 (a) birds (b) dangerous (c) plants (d) birds
- 58 The giraffe is..... than the camel .
 (a) tall (b) taller (c) tallest (d) the tallest
- 59 I like reading ,..... I don't like drawing .
 (a) but (b) and (c) or (d) so
- 60 flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.
 (a) They (b) That (c) Those (d) These
- 61 Egyptian farmers raise
 (a) giraffes (b) chickens (c) elephants (d) lions



- 62 I like reading,I don't like drawing.
 (a) but (b) and (c) or (d) so
- 63 Camels are than horses. They are about 2.0 m.
 (a) slower (b) faster (c) taller (d) tall
- 64 I have pencils than my sister .
 (a) few (b) fewer (c) the fewest (d) two
- 65 are my friends.
 (a) This (b) Those (c) That (d) Them
- 66 I don't drink cola I exercise every day.
 (a) for (b) so (c) but (d) where
- 67 grow vegetables for us to eat.
 (a) Engineers (b) Farmers (c) Doctors (d) Teachers
- 68 have large beautiful eyes
 (a) Horses (b) Plants (c) Flowers (d) Potatoes
- 69 A snake isdangerous than a fox.
 (a) more (b) most (c) least (d) the
- 70 Rhinoceroses have big ears and long
 (a) coats (b) horns (c) hooves (d) fingers
- 71 We use camels' fur to make
 (a) clothes (b) milk (c) food (d) butter
- 72 My grandfather grows vegetables and fruit in his farm. He's a/an.....
 (a) farmer (b) engineer (c) teacher (d) architect
- 73 What.....you like to play with when you were little?
 (a) did (b) do (c) does (d) doing
- 74 The..... land animal is the giraffe.
 (a) tallest (b) taller (c) tall (d) smaller
- 75 I wash my face in the
 (a) balcony (b) bedroom (c) bathroom (d) bedroom
- 76are green.
 (a) Leaves (b) Roots (c) Soil (d) Seeds
- 77 What is the animal in the world?
 (a) big (b) bigger (c) biggest (d) small



- 78 We use the of camels to make clothes
 (a) meat (b) milk (c) fur (d) tooth
- 79 To mix something again means to
 (a) not mix (b) mix (c) remix (d) no mix
- 80 A: What do farmers raise in Egypt? -....., cows and ducks.
 (a) Chickens (b) Rice (c) Potatoes (d) milk
- 81 A cat is small, a horse is big.
 (a) on (b) so (c) but (d) and
- 82 Did you.....a house for your sister's doll?
 (a) made (b) make (c) making (d) makes
- 83 The is made of cloth
 (a) house (b) cave (c) tent (d) apartment
- 84 There are tall trees in of the house .
 (a) front (b) next (c) under (d) on
- 85 We our garden plants every week.
 (a) water (b) drink (c) paint (d) play
- 86 he visit his grandmother last night?
 (a) Did (b) Are (c) Does (d) Is
- 87 There are four chairs and a table the balcony .
 (a) next (b) inside (c) to (d) to
- 88 Those builders building the new hospital
 (a) are (b) does (c) do (d) is
- 89 A.....works in the tourism industry.
 (a) librarian (b) guide (c) fisherman (d) teacher
- 90 She loved to experiment. She was very.....
 (a) sad (b) angry (c) curious (d) lazy
- 91 A..... fixes cars.
 (a) fisherman (b) mechanic (c) farmer (d) plumber
- 92 We eat breakfast in the
 (a) evening (b) morning (c) afternoon (d) night
- 93 Egypt is a big
 (a) governorate (b) country (c) city (d) village



- 94 She carried a..... to open old radios.
 (a) socket (b) screwdriver (c) tape measure (d) pencil
- 95 The grow under the soil .
 (a) roots (b) leaves (c) flowers (d) seeds
- 96 We sleep in the
 (a) bedroom (b) kitchen (c) dining room (d) living room
- 97 Camels..... perfect for the desert.
 (a) is (b) was (c) are (d) am
- 98 I like guavas watermelon .
 (a) so (b) but (c) and (d) because
- 99 Chickens give us
 (a) eggs (b) milk (c) grass (d) pasta
- 100 The fennec fox is other foxes .
 (a) smaller (b) small (c) smaller than (d) smallest
- 101 The van was fixed and we heard the sound of the.....
 (a) music (b) engine (c) faucet (d) pipe
- 102 My book is the table. I can't see it .
 (a) next (b) in front of (c) behind (d) between
- 103 Sunflowers face the
 (a) stars (b) sun (c) moon (d) seed
- 104 apples are on the tree . I can't get them
 (a) Those (b) These (c) That (d) This
- 105 When Talia..... a baby, she played with blocks.
 (a) were (b) is (c) was (d) are
- 106 apples are on the tree .
 (a) Those (b) This (c) That (d) They
- 107 We use the..... to grow new plants .
 (a) flowers (b) seeds (c) leaves (d) roots
- 108 The in Hurghada are beautiful . We can swim and play there .
 (a) schools (b) offices (c) beaches (d) Hospitals
- 109 He didn't.....angry with his little brothers.
 (a) got (b) get (c) gets (d) getting



- 110 The fennec fox lives in the
 (a) desert (b) sea (c) sky (d) park
- 111 The old fisherman.....lovely fresh fish.
 (a) drew (b) caught (c) threw (d) wrote
- 112 We produce vegetables like and potatoes
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) watermelon (d) apples
- 113 Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is
 (a) healthy (b) unhealthy (c) scary (d) sad
- 114 Horses are
 (a) birds (b) animals (c) plants (d) food
- 115 We havein the morning.
 (a) lunch (b) dinner (c) breakfast (d) night
- 116 We.....lots of vegetables in Egypt .
 (a) produce (b) raise (c) keep (d) play
- 117 The fennec fox has a thick..... to keep warm.
 (a) fur (b) beak (c) feather (d) eye
- 118 Our house is very old. We want to It.
 (a) repaint (b) redo (c) reread (d) reuse
- 119 Farmers grow and onions.
 (a) toys (b) computers (c) tomatoes (d) books
- 120 Birds have a to eat with .
 (a) fur (b) wings (c) beak (d) feathers
- 121 Where is the hospital ? – It's The corner .
 (a) on (b) at (c) in (d) to
- 122 The..... is a small plant .
 (a) soil (b) flower (c) shoot (d) root
- 123 bird is so near . I can see it well
 (a) that (b) This (c) those (d) these
- 124 have seeds inside.
 (a) Tomatoes (b) Eyes (c) Ears (d) Animals
- 125 I play computer games in the It's very comfortable there .
 (a) cave (b) living room (c) rock (d) bathroom
- 126 The Is near my house . I can send letters and packages easily
 (a) shopping mall (b) post office (c) school (d) hospital



- 127 We can cook delicious food in our It's very big .
 (a) bathroom (b) living room (c) kitchen (d) bedroom
- 128 My uncle lives on a He can see water everywhere.
 (a) cave (b) tent (c) houseboat (d) house
- 129 Farmers work in the.....
 (a) desert habitat (b) rivers (c) agricultural habitat (d) lakes
- 130 The plant roots grow The soil . We can't see them well .
 (a) under (b) above (c) in front of (d) Next to
- 131 How is a horse ? - it is about 459 kg .
 (a) happy (b) heavy (c) long (d) tall
- 132 The hospital is to the school . I can get to it quickly .
 (a) front (b) between (c) next (d) on
- 133 The rose is the flower
 (a) nicer (b) more beautiful (c) most beautiful (d) bigger
- 134 The roots grow the soil.
 (a) next to (b) on (c) under (d)
- 135 How is a camel? - It is about 1.9 m tall.
 (a) old (b) heavy (c) tall (d) fast
- 136 is Minya ? - it's in the south of Egypt .
 (a) When (b) How (c) Where (d) Who
- 137 lives there ? - about 1.5 ,million Egyptians live in Damietta .
 (a) When (b) How (c) who (d) Why
- 138 Theis in the rock.
 (a) house (b) cave (c) tent (d) apartment
- 139 Go ahead and turn right . The supermarket is on the corner
 (a) left (b) straight (c) up (d) right
- 140 bus is taking me to school .
 (a) these (b) This (c) those (d) They
- 141 These children watching tv .
 (a) am (b) is (c) are (d) was



- 142 Plants that live in the.....do not need a lot of water .
 (a) river (b) desert (c) farm (d) lake
- 143 Can you help me the kitchen ?
 (a) take (b) give (c) organize (d) play

Question 03

Read and complete the text with the words in the box

1

(germination- grows - above – under)

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows .That is called germination. We water the plant every day, and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

2

(were – color – repainted – small)

My house is old . I wanted to make it beautiful I repainted it . The new color Was green and red my friend helped me . We were very happy .

3

(explained - helping - taller – angry)

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes helping people. Sometimes,big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and explained things all the time.

4

(teacher - next - kind – town)

I live in a small town .My school is next to a big park . My father is a teacher He is a very kind He teaches English . Students like him very much .

5

(sell - summer - down - meet – parents)

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My parents work in tourist boats so I go with them . we travel up and down the Nile . I like the summer very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the world.



6

(juice- lunch – chicken- delicious – fruits)

I'm hungry. I want to have my ... lunch I like to have ... chicken and rice. The food is delicious I love fruits too. I want to have watermelon and drink some juice

7

(germination – flowers – red – yellow)

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony ! They have leaves and flowers..... tomatoes are green before they are ... red We plant a seed and the plant grows . that is called ... germination

8

(house - in - Between - front)

My name is Sif . I live in a village next to the Nile . I live in a house with my family . Our house is between a pink house and a yellow house . There are tall trees in front of the house .

9

(beak – paw – hungry – thirsty)

A pelican and a bear are in the river . they are very hungry They are both looking at a big juicy fish . the bear reaches for the fish . It lifts its ... paw ... the pelican opens its beak ... it is ready to take the fish out of the water .

10

(catch – live – goats – grow)

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients .The farmers can grow rice , tomatoes , wheat and grapes . Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea , cows , goats and sheep live in Damietta governorate . Domiati cheese is very famous .

11

(green-billion- rainwater – life)

My grandparents had a farm. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a billion litres of water a year.They used plants to make the land green



12

(streets - collector - builder - deliver)

we need all jobs . All the local homes and businessmen need a mail carrier to **deliver** The packages and letters . We all need the garbage **collector** To take away the garbage and keep the **streets** clean .

13

(school - balcony - between - friends – hospital)

We live in a big house near the sea . We have a big **balcony** .We put flowers in it .Our house is **between** The post office and the **hospital** . I walk to my **school** Every day . It is wonderful . I meet my **friends** And play together .

Question 04

Read the text and answer the questions

1

Hisham and his brother Amr have a big farm near Alexandria. They grow many kinds of fruit like bananas, apples and mangoes. They like going to the farm and playing under the trees. One day, Amr wanted to cut down the trees to sell the wood, but Hisham was angry. Hisham stopped his brother and advised him to grow more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the passage is about.....

(**cutting trees** - keeping animals - growing mangoes - playing under trees)

2. Hisham and Amr grow many kinds of.....

(vegetables – rice – **fruit** – dessert)

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Amr want to cut down the trees?

To sell the wood

4. What did Hisham advise Amr to do?

He advised him to grow more trees.

2

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. Teachers can change their student's lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.



A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The text is about the (doctor's - **teacher's** - engineer's) job.
- 2 Teachers need to be very (nervous- **patient** - unkind).

B) Answer the following questions.

- 3 What do students ask?

Students always ask surprising questions.

- 4 Who can change the students' lives?

The teacher

3

Damietta is a big Egyptian governorate. Its land is rich in nutrients. The farmers there grow many foods such as rice, wheat, tomatoes, potatoes, lemons, grapes and guavas. They raise farm animals such as goats, cows and sheep, too. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. About one and a half million people live there. Life in Damietta is good.

Choose the correct answer:

- 3 (**Damietta governorate** – Domiati cheese – Fishermen) is the best title for the passage.
- 4 The life in Damietta is (bad – **good** – sad).

Answer the following question :

- 2- What do farmers in Damietta governorate grow?

They grow many foods such as rice, wheat , tomatoes , potatoes , lemons , grapes and guavas .

4

There are many jobs in our country. They are all important in our life. For example, the garbage collector cleans our streets. The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes. The bus driver takes us to school. The teacher teaches us many subjects.

A. Choose the correct answer

1. The main idea in the text is about
- (electricity – **jobs** – water – children)
- 2 – A..... helps you keep your street clean.
- (farmer – teacher - **garbage collector** – plumber)

B-Answer the following questions:

3. How does the plumber help us?

The plumber fixes the faucets and pipes.

4. Who drives you to school?

The bus driver takes us to school.



5

Sarah's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to land.

A-Choose the correct answer:

- 1-Sarah's grandparents decided to buy
(a new house- **some land**-some trees-some flowers).
- 2-They lived in..... (the village-**the city**-the farm-the land).

B-Answer the following questions:

- 3-What did Sarah's grandparents plant? **They planted millions of seeds.**
- 4-How did they water the seeds? **They used rainwater to water the seeds.**

6

My name is Hani. I live in a big house. It has two bedrooms, a big living room, a dining room, a kitchen and a bathroom. My bedroom is my favourite room. I sleep and do my homework in it. I love sitting in the balcony, too. We grow plants and flowers there.

A) Choose the correct answers:

- 1 - Hani lives in a (apartment – **house** – house boat – cave)
- 2 - Hani's favourite room is the (dinig room – kitchen – bathroom – **bedroom**)

B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Where does Hani grow plants and flowers?**in the balcony.**
- 4- What does Hani do in his bedroom? **He sleeps and does his homework in it.**

7

Nada moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big. It is near Nada's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Nada's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Nada can see the street from the balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new apartment.has bedrooms .
(**two** – three – four – five)



2 - Nada can see the street from the

(bedroom – **balcony** – kitchen – bathroom)

B. Answer the following questions:

3 - What is Nada's favorite room?

Nada's favorite room is the living room.

4 - Where is the new apartment?

It is near Nada's school.

8

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram. The fox loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fox loses ... **heat** from its ears.

(**heat** – cold – water – food)

2. The fennec fox is ... **smaller** than other foxes.

(bigger - **smaller** – thinner – taller)

3. The fox's thick... **fur** keeps it warm at night.

(beak – feather – wing – **fur**)

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the fennec fox live?

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.

5. What does the fennec fox eat?

It eats insects, small lizards and mice.

9

My friend Abeer works at a supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. Abeer checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Abeer works at a

(school – **supermarket** – hospital – bank)

2 - We see Abeer every

(**week** – month – day – year)



B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Abeer check?

Abeer checks the food is fresh.

4. When does Abeer help us?

She helps us when we can't find something.

Question 05

Read and write the correct form of the words between brackets

- 1 The bear is stronger **than** (that) the pelican.
- 2 Ancient Egyptians **made** (make) paper from papyrus.
- 3 The school is **on** [between] the corner.
- 4 The shopping mall is **between** (of) the supermarket and the bank .
- 5 I eat vegetables **and** (but) I exercise.
- 6 The girl is **disappointed** [appointed], she didn't pass the exam.
- 7 I drink cola, **but** (and) I want to drink more water.
- 8 The rose is the **most** [more] beautiful flower .
- 9 He is a **careful** (care) driver.
- 10 Crocodiles and snakes are the **most** [more] dangerous animals.
- 11 The plane is **faster** [fastest] than the train.
- 12 The hospital is **in front** (next) of the school.
- 13 My house is **between** (next to) the tall house and the tree.
- 14 The turtle is **the** [than] slowest animal .
- 15 This sunflower lives the **longest** (long) .
- 16 Let's **eat** (eating) lunch.
- 17 Adel is **more** [most] intelligent than Wael.
- 18 The couch is **in** (on) the living room.
- 19 How **heavy** (tall) is the fennec fox? - It's one kg.
- 20 My city is **the nicest** (nicer) place to live.
- 21 This car **is** [are] very expensive.
- 22 My cat is the **biggest** (big) on our street.
- 23 Which animal is the **scariest** (scary)?
- 24 The chef **remade** (made) rice. This means he made it again.



- 25 The cat **disappeared** [appeared]. I can't see it.
- 26 He **repainted** (painted) his house. This means he painted it again.
- 27 The fennec fox is **smaller** (small) than other foxes.
- 28 The snake is the **scariest** (scary) animal .
- 29 There is a tree **next** (under) to my house.
- 30 She always cares for her children. She's very **careful** [care].
- 31 Hurghada **is** (be) in the east of Egypt.
- 32 Crocodiles are **the most** [more] dangerous animals.
- 33 Chocolate is **more** (most) delicious than candies.
- 34 **Those** (That) are my shoes.
- 35 **How** (What) tall is the horse? - 1.8 m.
- 36 Nada is a very **beautiful** [beauty) girl.
- 37 Elephants are the **biggest** [bigger) animals.
- 38 The sunflower is **the** [that] tallest flower.
- 39 What do you **want** [wanted] to be?
- 40 He wants to **be** [being] an engineer.
- 41 Rhim Gazelles have **big** (bigger) ears and long horns .
- 42 The book is **on** (in) the shelf.
- 43 Tomatoes **have** (has) seeds inside.
- 44 These children **are** (is) watching TV.
- 45 These keys **are** [is] made of metal.
- 46 Dogs are **thinner** [thin] than elephants .
- 47 I think maize is **the most delicious** (delicious) of these three plants.
- 48 My house is **between** (next) the tall house and the tree.
- 49 I play basketball **and** (but) I play football in the park.
- 50 Those **are** [is] my Pencils .
- 51 I want to go swimming, **but** [so] my leg hurts.
- 52 This cat is the **nicest** (nice) in our street.
- 53 How **heavy** (heavier) is the horse ? - It's 390 H
- 54 After school, I do my homework **and** [but] I eat dinner.
- 55 Which animal is the **scariest** [scarier]?
- 56 He speaks English, **but** [and] he can't speak Chinese.
- 57 I play basketball **and** (but) I play football in the park.



- 58 The kitchen is **next** (in front) to the living room.
- 59 Look! A plane is flying **above** (on) our house.
- 60 This **is** [are] my car.
- 61 I don't eat candy, **but** (and) I like fruit.
- 62 Shaimaa **redid** (did) her homework. This means she did it again.

Question 06

Punctuate the following

- 1 egyptian farmers produce many things
Egyptian farmers produce many things.
 - 2 we grow cotton in Egypt
We grow cotton in Egypt.
 - 3 all jobs are important
All jobs are important .
 - 4 sugarcane is a sweet plant
Sugarcane is a sweet plant.
 - 5 what does the plant use to make its food
What does the plant use to make its food ?
 - 6 my friend lives in Cairo
My friend lives in Cairo.
 - 7 what job do you want to do
What job do you want to do ?
 - 8 farmers grow food for us to eat
Farmers grow food for us to eat.
 - 9 i like playing football
I like playing football.
 - 10 who helps you keep your home clean
Who helps you keep your home clean ?
 - 11 a bird has two wings
A bird has two wings.
 - 12 snakes are scary animals
Snakes are scary animals.
- hurghada is in the east of Egypt



- 13 Hurghada is in the east of Egypt.
- 14 my name s mahmoud
My name's Mahmoud.
- 15 where do you live
Where do you live?
- 16 she s patient and helpful
She's patient and helpful.
- 17 do you like fish
Do you like fish?
- 18 why is a broken wire dangerous
Why is a broken wire dangerous ?
- 19 I live on a farm
I live on a farm.
- 20 don't touch a broken wire
Don't touch a broken wire.
- 21 how tall are you
How tall are you ?
- 22 what do you want to do
What do you want to do?
- 23 I go to the supermaket with lara
I go to the supermarket with Lara .
- 24 the bear is a big animal
The bear is a big animal.
- 25 my father is a doctor
My father is a doctor.
- 26 what does the heart do
What does the heart do?
- 27 which animal is scary
Which animal is scary?
- 28 how many people helped you in your home
How many people helped you in your home ?
- 29 is lara an electrician
Is Lara an electrician ?
- what do you want to be
What do you want to be ?



Question 07**write a paragraph of 18 words using the following elements****1****The germination process****(seeds – roots)**

To grow any plant, we follow some steps. First, we put the seeds in soil. Next, we water the seed. The seed germinates. Then, the roots grow under the soil and the shoot grows above the soil. We water the plant. After that, the plant has flower. Finally, the flowers become fruits.

2**A garbage collector****(outside – clean)**

The garbage collector is a difficult job. He's outside all day. He gets wet when rains. He is happy because he helps to dean the city. He is healthy because he walks every day.

3**The fennec fox****(desert - lizards)**

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It has big ears. It is about 20 centimeters tall. It is about one kilogram. It eats insects, lizards and small animals. When it is hot, the fox loses heat from its ears.

4**Camels****(Strong - without water)**

Camels are strong animals They help us to carry things to cross the desert. Camel's milk is delicious. Camels have large, flat feet. They can live without water for a long time.

5**My house****(favorite room – balcony)**

My family and I live in a big house. It has many rooms. My favorite room is the bedroom with a balcony, because I enjoy the view of the street and the garden



6**My town****(supermarkets – shopping mall)**

I live in a small town. It has many houses, stores, supermarkets, a shopping mall a park and a school. I go to school in the morning. I play football with my friends at the park in the afternoon. In the evening, I watch TV at home.

7**'My favorite job'****(teacher – help)**

I want to be a teacher. It's a good job. I want to help children learn. I think I'm patient. A good teacher is ready to learn. A teacher can change their students' lives.

8**'Horses'****(strong – grass)**

Horses are amazing. They are strong animals. They can run fast. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful eyes.

9**Food in Egypt****(produce – raise)**

Egyptian farmers produce many things. They grow a lot of food for us to eat. They grow fruit and vegetables. They raise chickens to get eggs

10**Being Healthy****(drink water – play basketball)**

To be healthy, You should drink plenty of water. You should eat healthy food. You should do a lot of exercise. You should play basketball. You shouldn't eat unhealthy food.



11

The life cycle of a sunflower

(plant a seed – faces the sun)

First, we plant a seed in the soil. Next, the seed germinates and starts to grow. It grows leaves. After about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun. Finally, the sunflower dies. It drops its seeds . The process begins again.

12

Electricity

(dangerous – wet hands)

Electricity is very dangerous. You can get an electric shock. To use electricity safely, Never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Never put anything electrical into the socket. Only use plugs.

13

Your favorite room

(living room – watch TV)

My favorite room is the living room. There is a big balcony. I can see the whole street. I watch TV in the living room. I talk to my family in the living room.

14

Different jobs

(electrician – plumber)

All jobs are important. An electrician connects electricity. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers letters and parcels. A garbage collector helps to keep our house clean.

تم بحمد الله ،

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم " إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا " صدق الله العظيم



حمل الآن

مجاناً وحصرياً

المراجعة رقم (4)

الترم الاول



Unit 1



I feel good

أشعر أنني بخير

Key vocabulary :

milk	bananas	mangoes	grapes	watermelon
لب	موز	مانجو	عنب	بطيخ
potatoes	onions	sugarcane	rice	chicken
بطاطس	بصل	قصب	أرز	فراخ
burger	candy	cola	football	video games
برجر	حلوى	كولا	كرة القدم	ألعاب الفيديو
wheelchair	scientist	basketball	team	banana milkshake
كرسي متحرك	عالم	كرة السلة	فريق	مخفوق الموز باللبن
emperor	palace	competition	gardener	emperor
امبراطور	قصر	منافسة	جنايني	امبراطور
seeds	honest	China	king	seeds
بنور	شخص أمين	دولة المبيه	ملك	بنور
governorate	fishermen	guavas	farmers	grapes
محافظة	مباد	جواقة	فلاح	عنب
wheat	lemons	crops	sheep	goat
قمح	ليمون أصفر	محاصيل	خروف	معة

Grammar

and

نستخدمها للربط بين جملتين متشابهتين أو لإضافة معلومات

- We eat healthy food and I exercise.
- Maryam loves chocolate and icecream.
- After school, I have lunch and I do my homework.

but

نستخدمها للربط بين جملتين متناقضتين (عكس بعض)

- I want to play football, but I hurt my leg.
- I can speak English, but I can't speak French.
- I want to go to work, but I am ill.

The prefix "re"

هي بادئة تضاف قبل الفعل و تعطي معنى مرة أخرى

do again	يفعل مرة أخرى	redo	يعيد فعل
write again	يكتب مرة أخرى	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
paint again	يرده مرة أخرى	repaint	يعيد دهان
clean again	ينظف مرة أخرى	re clean	يعيد تنظيف
make again	يعمل مرة أخرى	re make	يعيد عمل
read again	يقم أمرة أخرى	reread	يعيد قراءة

We painted our house again = We repainted our house.

She cleaned her room again = She recleaned her room.



Important Sentences

Lunch is ready.

الغداء جاهز.

I made some special food for us.

أنا صنعت بعض الطعام الخاص لنا.

It looks delicious.

الطعام يبدو لذيذاً.

I think we grow rice in Egypt.

أنا أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.

I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

أنا أعتقد أننا نربي الدجاج في مصر.

Egyptian farmers produce many things.

المزارعون المصريون ينتجون العديد من الأشياء.

What foods do we produce in Egypt?

ما الأطعمة التي ننتجها في مصر؟

We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes, and tomatoes.

نحن ننتج الخضروات مثل البصل والبطاطس والطماطم.

I do a lot of sport at school.

أنا أقوم بالكثير من الرياضة في المدرسة.

I really like walking because...

أنا حقاً أحب المشي لأنني...

I don't eat candy.

أنا لا أتناول الحلوى.

My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.

فواكهي المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ.

My mom makes an awesome banana milkshake.

أمي تصنع مخفوق موز رائع.

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team.

أنا في فريق كرة سلة للكراسي المتحركة.

We practice three times every week.

نحن ندرّب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع.

I want to drink more water.

أنا أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء.

I play football in the park.

أنا ألعب كرة القدم في الحديقة.

I think I'm healthy.

أنا أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة.

I go walking in the desert with my dad.

أنا أذهب للمشي في الصحراء مع والدي.

Dad is a scientist.

والدي يكون عالماً.

He likes looking at animals and plants.

هو يحب النظر إلى الحيوانات والنباتات.

I don't like cola.

أنا لا أحب الكولا.

I love burgers, but I only eat one a week.

أنا أحب البرجر، لكنني أتناول واحدة فقط في الأسبوع.

The most important man in China was the emperor.

الإمبراطور كان أهم رجل في الصين.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden.

تشينغ كان جيداً جداً في زراعة الأشياء والاعتناء بحديقته.

Where is your plant?

نباتك أيه هو؟

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.

الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية.

Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea.

المصيدون يصطادون آلاف الأسماك في البحر.

Domiat cheese is very famous.

جبنة الدمياط مشهورة جداً.

Life is good in Damietta.

الحياة في دمياط جيدة.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 1**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

1. Farmers are very for us.

a. important

b. bad

c. ugly

d. hungry

2. Farmers food for us to eat.

a. damage

b. produce

c. play

d. see

3. They grow and onions.

a. carrots

b. lettuce

c. tomatoes

d. trees

4. They raise to get eggs.

a. goats

b. sheep

c. chickens d. cows

(B)

1. are living things.

a. Tables

b. books

c. Chairs

d. Plants

2. Some plants are and some are small.

a. big

b. ugly

c. sad

d. terrible

3. Plants need water to

a. swim

b. wash

c. grow

d. eat

4. We need to plants.

a. take care of

b. cut

c. wash

d. damage

(C)

1. Egyptian Farmers produce things.

a. bad

b. good

c. a few

d. many

2. They plant and fruits.

a. trees

b. flowers

c. vegetables

d. grass

3. They plant tomatoes and potatoes.

a. lettuce

b. onions

c. carrots

d. trees

4. They also raise

a. chickens

b. cows

c. dogs

d. donkeys

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We get sugar from

a onions

b sugarcane

c trees

d peppers

2. are my favourite fruit.

a Potatoes

b Mangoes

c Peppers

d Onions

3. We have main meals وجبات every day.

a one

b two

c three

d ten

4. Farmers raise for eggs.

a cows

b donkeys

c goats

d chickens

5. Egypt is a great

- a** country **b** city **c** town **d** village

5. Egyptian farmers a lot of fruit and vegetables.

- a** win **b** grow **c** study **d** smell

6. The food looks I like it very much.

- a** bad **b** sad **c** delicious **d** tall

7. We have in the afternoon.

- a** breakfast **b** lunch **c** dinner **d** supper

8. Tomatoes and onions are

- a** toys **b** vegetables **c** fruits **d** books

9. are red vegetables.

- a** potatoes **b** Watermelons **c** Cucumbers **d** Tomatoes

10. What do we produce in Egypt? - Potatoes and tomatoes

- a** food **b** clothes **c** animals **d** birds

10. We usually have in the morning

- a** breakfast **b** dinner **c** lunch **d** supper

11. This food comes from our, Egypt.

- a** village **b** town **c** city **d** country

12. We like to eat fruit and vegetables. We are

- a** healthy **b** unhealthy **c** happy **d** bad

13. Dad is a and he likes looking at animals and plants.

- a** driver **b** chef **c** scientist **d** pilot

14. Ahmed can't walk so he has a

- a** bike **b** wheelchair **c** car **d** plane

15. I walk to my grandma's house. I go there

- a** by car **b** by bike **c** buy taxi **d** on foot

16. I don't eat candy, It is

- a** healthy **b** unhealthy **c** happy **d** bad

17. My favorite are bananas and watermelon.

- a** fruits **b** vegetables **c** books **d** clothes

18. My mom makes a/ an banana milkshake!

- a** awesome **b** not good **c** bad **d** ugly

19. I drink cola, but It isnt

- a** healthy **b** unhealthy **c** happy **d** bad

20. "....." means to paint again.

- a** Repaint **b** Paint **c** Painting **d** Painted

21. He is goodlooking after his garden.

- a** for **b** at **c** of **d** next

22. The..... is someone who is like a king.
(a) teacher (b) farmer (c) emperor (d) vet
23. Someone who is, does not lie.
(a) beautiful (b) ugly (c) honest (d) happy
24. The emperor lives in an awesome
(a) hospital (b) palace (c) restaurant (d) bank
25. I try to win the.....
(a) lesson (b) exam (c) test (d) competition
26. I my plant every day to help them grow.
(a) wash (b) water (c) leave (d) eat
27. My brother is planting trees. He likes trees very much.
(a) good at (b) bad at (c) terrible at (d) lazy at
28. We put in the soil to grow plants.
(a) clothes (b) seeds (c) tables (d) food
29. My uncle is a he looks after plants
(a) dentist (b) vet (c) gardener (d) doctor
30. About one and a half million people in Damietta.
(a) die (b) catch (c) try (d) live
31. Domiati cheese is very.....
(a) famous (b) bad (c) dirty (d) sweet
32. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in.....
(a) nutrients (b) cars (c) people (d) sugar
33. Fishermen catch thousands of in the sea.
(a) cows (b) goats (c) fish (d) birds
34. is governorate in Egypt.
(a) London (b) New York (c) Paris (d) Damietta
35. Damietta is for cheese.
(a) sad (b) ugly (c) famous (d) happy
36. My uncle is ahe catches a lot of fish in the sea.
(a) vet (b) doctor (c) fisherman (d) driver
37. and potatoes are my favourite vegetables.
(a) Tomatoes (b) Grabs (c) Mangoes (d) Guavas
38. Damietta is a in Egypt.
(a) city (b) village (c) governorate (d) town
39. The usually grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes and wheat.
(a) farmers (b) doctors (c) teachers (d) vets

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**make - football - cola - play- week**

Omar is in a wheelchair basketball team at school. He practices three times every (1) He drinks (2) , but he wants to drink more water. He doesn't (3) video games because he is very busy. He plays basketball and he plays (4) in the park.

fish - good - grow - live - bad

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can (1) rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen catch thousand of (2) in the sea. About one and a half million people (3) in this part of Egypt. Life is (4) in Damietta!

garden - palace - honest - lie - flowers

Once upon a time, there was a rich emperor. He and his family lived in a (1) He was (2) and all people loved him. He had a very beautiful (3) and it was full of many (4)

but - play - and - times - basketball

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three (1) every week. I drink cola, (2) I want to drink more water. I don't (3) video games because I'm very busy. I play (4) and I play football in the park.

delicious - farmers - Doctors - grow - fruits

We produce many foods in Egypt. We (1) rice, onions, and tomatoes. (2) grow many things we eat every day. Egypt produces (3) like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Food is (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

In China, an old emperor wanted to choose the new emperor. He gave the gardeners some seeds to grow. The emperor told the gardeners that the one who could grow the most **beautiful** plant, he would be the next emperor. Cheng was one of the gardeners.

Cheng was very good at growing things and looking after his garden. He put the seed in the sun and gave it water. But nothing happened. Cheng tried for weeks but no plant grew. The other gardeners had plants that grew. At the end, Cheng won because the seeds were dead. Only Cheng is honest and good. So, he would be the next emperor.



A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Cheng won because the seeds were.....
a. dead b. good c. lazy d. nice
2. The underlined word "**beautiful**" means.....
a. bad b. ugly c. lazy d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Chang win?

.....

4. Where was the emperor?

.....

I'm Maryam. I think I'm healthy because I do a lot of sports at the club. I practice tennis three times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. Also I don't eat candy. I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelons. My mom makes **awesome** food and banana milkshake. My sister Dina likes fruit. She likes apples and mangoes very much.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "**awesome**" means.....
a. bad b. wonderful c. unhealthy d. late
2. Maryam does a lot of..... at the club.
a. buildings b. jobs c. sports d. foods

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are Dina's favorite fruits?

.....

4. What does mom make?

.....

Malak lives in Damietta. It is a beautiful part of Egypt. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. Malak's dad is a fisherman. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Malak's uncle raise cows, goats, and sheep in his farm in Damietta governorate. She likes Domiati cheese because it is very famous.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Malak's dad is a
a. fisherman b. teacher c. scientist d. nurse
2. She likes
a. water b. cola c. juice d. cheese

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where do Maryam and her mom go walking?

.....

4. What does mom make ?

.....

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We grow different kinds in Egypt. Mangoes grow in summer. Watermelon is a sweet fruit that grows in the summer. Banana is a yellow-coloured fruit. We get sugar from sugarcane. Fruits are delicious and **healthy**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We different kinds of fruit in Egypt.
a. grow b. study c. play d. smell
2. The word **healthy** is the opposite of
a. tasty b. nice c. unhealthy d. good

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plant do we get sugar from?

3. What is the main idea of the text?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. I want to go swimming,(and) it is raining.
2. Maryam likes ice cream (so) chocolate.
3. After school, I do my homework (but) I eat lunch.
4. I practice football (but) I walk home from school every day.
5. My father is Egyptian, (and) my mother is American.
6. He speaks English, (and) he can't speak Chinese.
7. I want to play football, (because) I hurt my leg.
8. I can speak English (but) French.
9. I want to go to work, (so) I am ill.
10. We eat healthy food (but) exercise.
11. Dad is a scientist (but) he likes looking at animals and plants.
12. We (painted) our house this means we painted it again.
13. She (recleaned) her room again.
14. I want to watch TV, (and) It is time to sleep.
15. My homework has a lot of mistakes. I need to (do) it.
16. I didn't understand the lesson, I will (reread) it again.

6. Punctuate the following

1. the palace is where an emperor lives
2. we produce vegetables and fruits
3. Damietta is famous for domiati cheese
4. egyptian farmers produce many things
5. chang was good at growing

6. egyptian farmers raise chickens

7. which food comes from our country

8. What foods do we produce in Egypt

PARAGRAPHS

Healthy lifestyle

I am Samy. I'm healthy. I do sports at the club. Every Friday, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like walking. I don't eat candy, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and watermelon.

نمط حياة صحي
أنا سامي. أنا بصحة جيدة. أمارس الرياضة في النادي. كل يوم جمعة، أمشي إلى منزل جدي مع عائلتي. أحب المشي كثيراً. لا أتناول الحلوى، ولكنه أحب الفواكه. فأكفني المفضلة هي الموز والبطيخ.

A scientist

My dad is a scientist. I like this job. I love looking at animals and plants. I go walking in the desert with my dad. It's a very interesting job. It's also a difficult job. It's very hot in the desert.

عالم
والدي عالم. أحب هذه المهنة. أحب مشاهدة الحيوانات والنباتات. أذهب للمشي في الصحراء مع والدي. إنها أيضاً وظيفة صعبة. الجو حار جداً في الصحراء.

Damietta governorate

I love Egypt . I live in Damietta in Egypt. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers grow a lot of different fruits. They can grow grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate. We grow many crops.

محافظة دمياط
أحب مصر. أعيش في دمياط في مصر. الأرض في محافظة دمياط غنية بالعناصر الغذائية. يزرع المزارعون العديد من الفواكه المختلفة. يمكنهم زراعة العنب والجوافة. يصطاد الصيادون آلاف الأسماك في البحر. تعيش الأبقار والماعز والأغنام في محافظة دمياط. نحن نزرع العديد من المحاصيل.

Honest person

I love my friend Samy. He is very honest. He doesn't tell lie. All people love him. He is very a good person. We all should be honest and kind.

شخص صادق
أحب صديقي سامي. إنه صادق جداً. لا يكذب أبداً. جميع الناس يحبونه. إنه شخص جيد جداً. يجب أن نكون جميعاً صادقين ولطفاء.



Unit 2



Desert Animals

حيوانات الصحراء

Key vocabulary :

desert	fennec fox	crocodile	eagle	snake
صحراء	ثعلب الفنك	تمساح	نسر	ثعبان
lizard	spider	camel	pelican	feather
سحلية	عنكبوت	جمل	بجعة	ريشة
flat feet	Camel	horse	noisy	perfect
أقدام مسطحة	جمل	حصان	مرجح	مثالي
bear	beak	pelican	claw	paw
دب	منقار	بجعة	مخلب الحيوان	كف الحيوان
rhinoceros	fennec fox	coat	horns	heat
غزال الريم	ثعلب الفنك	فرو	قرون	حرارة

Grammar

Comparative

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في صفة قصيدة مكونة من مقطع واحد نكتب الاتي

1. short adjectives

الصفات القصيدة

اسم + (is / are) + (adj - er) + than + اسم

♥ The horse is **faster** than the camel.

عند إضافة ال er الى نهاية الصفة نكتب الاتي :

2. Long Adjectives:

الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في صفة طويلة مكونة من أكثر من مقطع نكتب الاتي :

اسم + (is / are) + more + long adj (أكثر) + than + اسم

اسم + (is / are) + less + long adj (أقل) + than + اسم

♥ The crocodiles are **more dangerous** than the fish.

♥ A fox is **less dangerous** than a snake.

How + adj

من الممكن ان تكون ادوات استفهام جديده باستخدام How ثم صفة بعد منها
بمعنى كم ... بس الصفة هنا بدون اضافات .

How + adj	معناها	استخدامها	نجاوب عليها بـ	معناها
How tall	كم الطول	تسأل عن الطول الرأسي	cm / m	سنتيمتر / متر
How long	كم الطول	تسأل عن الطول الأفقي	cm / m	سنتيمتر / متر
How heavy	كم الوزن	تسأل عن الوزن	kg	كيلو جرام
How fast	كم السرعة	تسأل عن السرعة	kph	كيلو متر في الساعة

♥ How **tall** is the fennec fox?

- It is 20 cm.

♥ How **heavy** is the horse ?

- It is 380 kg.

Important Sentences

A lot of animals live in our country.

تعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في بلدنا.

The crocodile is huge and scary.

التمساح ضخم ومخيف.

Spiders are very helpful.

العناكب مفيدة جداً.

The pelican eats small fish.

البجج يأكل السمك الصغير.

Camels are amazing.

الجمال مذهلة.

Camels are beautiful, strong animals.

الجمال حيوانات جميلة وقوية.

They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert.

إنها تساعدنا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لعبور الصحراء.

Camels are perfect for the desert.

الجمال مثالية للصحراء.

Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

تمتلك الجمال أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة حتى تتمكن من المشي على الرمال.

Camels can live without water for a long time.

يمكن للجمال العيش بدون ماء لفترة طويلة.

Camels have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop the sand from coming in.

تمتلك الجمال طرقاً خاصة لإغلاق أنوفها وعيونها لمنع دخول الرمال.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful.

تبدو غزلان الريم جميلة جداً.

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert.

تعيش غزلان الريم في صحراء الصحراء الكبرى.

Rhim gazelles walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat.

تتجول غزلان الريم بحثاً عن العشب والأوراق والنباتات لتأكلها.

Rhim gazelles have big ears and long horns.

تمتلك غزلان الريم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة.

They have yellow-white coats.

لديهم فراء أصفر-أبيض.

Rhim gazelles' coat protects them from the sun.

يحميهم فراء غزلان الريم من الشمس.

Rhim gazelles don't need to drink a lot of water.

لا تحتاج غزلان الريم إلى شرب الكثير من الماء.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك في صحاري شمال أفريقيا.

The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes.

ثعلب الفنك أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى.

The fennec fox has really big ears.

يتملك ثعلب الفنك آذان كبيرة جداً.

The fennec needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.

يحتاج الفنك إلى آذان كبيرة لسماع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة.

The fennec fox eats insects, lizards, and small mice.

يأكل ثعلب الفنك الحشرات والسحالي والفقار الصغيرة.

During the day, it is hot in the desert.

خلال النهار، يكون الجو حاراً في الصحراء.

The fennec fox loses heat from its ears during the day.

يفقد ثعلب الفنك الحرارة من آذانه خلال النهار.

At night, it is cold in the desert.

في الليل، يكون الجو بارداً في الصحراء.

The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

يحافظ الفراء السميك لثعلب الفنك على دفئه.

The fennec fox lives in the desert.

يعيش ثعلب الفنك في الصحراء.



GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 2**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

1. The fennec fox lives in the.....
a. river b. dessert c. desert d. lake
2. The fennec fox is than other foxes.
a. smaller b. bigger c. longer d. taller
3. The fennec fox needs ears to hear insects.
a. small b. tiny c. short d. big
4. It loses heat from its.....
a. mouth b. legs c. ears d. nose

(B)

1. The bear and the pelican are in the.....
a. forest b. river c. lake d. desert
2. They are looking at a big fish.
a. juicy b. nice c. red d. good
3. The says sadly, "I'm sorry".
a. pelican b. bear c. cat d. fish
4. The bear is and bigger than the pelican.
a. smaller b. stronger c. faster d. longer

(C)

1. Some live in our country.
a. animals b. people c. trees d. fish
2. The is huge and scary.
a. crab b. snake c. pelican d. crocodile
3. Spiders are very.....
a. helpful b. cute c. short d. dangerous
4. like spiders.
a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Farmers d. Scientist

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Farmers like spiders. They are very
a helpful **b** small **c** bad **d** ugly
2. about the snake and the crocodile?
a When **b** What **c** Where **d** Who
3. The pelican eats small
a fish **b** cats **c** dogs **d** elephants
4. Snakes and the crocodiles the number of these small animals.



- (a) eat (b) increse (c) see (d) control
5. The crocodile lives in the
(a) river (b) desert (c) forest (d) street
6. The can fly in the sky.
(a) crocodile (b) fox (c) eagle (d) lizard
7. Spiders are very helpful because they insects.
(a) eat (b) drink (c) watch (d) smell
8. Be careful this snake is really
(a) cute (b) beautiful (c) ugly (d) scary
9. Camels can carry people to cross the
(a) sea (b) desert (c) river (d) lake
10. Camels are amazing and
(a) weak (b) small (c) beautiful (d) tiny
11. Camel milk is
(a) salty (b) delicious (c) bad (d) not good
12. We can use camel fur to make
(a) food (b) clothes (c) toys (d) furniture
13. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on
(a) grass (b) rocks (c) mud (d) sand
14. Camels can live without for a long time.
(a) food (b) sleep (c) water (d) sunlight
15. Camels can close their noses and eyes to stop from coming in.
(a) water (b) flies (c) wind (d) sand
16. Camels can be very and they can get angry.
(a) quiet (b) calm (c) friendly (d) noisy
17. Horses have large, beautiful They see well.
(a) tails (b) hooves (c) eyes (d) ears
18. Horses have strong to cut grass.
(a) hooves (b) teeth (c) hair (d) legs
19. Horses like to eat and drink fresh water.
(a) meat (b) grass (c) fish (d) fruits
20. The pelican has one
(a) leg (b) wing (c) beak (d) eye
21. A pelican and and a bear are in the to eat fish.
(a) sky (b) home (c) street (d) river
22. The bear is than the cat.
(a) smaller (b) bigger (c) shorter (d) less dangerous
23. The is stronger than the pelican.



- (a) mouse (b) cat (c) bear (d) fish
24. This watermelon is very It's full of juice.
(a) salty (b) juicy (c) dry (d) bad
25. The bear is because it gave the fish to the pelican.
(a) bad (b) terrible (c) ugly (d) greedy
26. The bear was hungry. It was looking for something to
(a) drink (b) smell (c) eat (d) play
27. The bear has sharp
(a) hair (b) legs (c) fingers (d) claws
28. The fennec fox lives in the
(a) sea (b) desert (c) sky (d) trees
29. Rhim gazelles have yellow-white to protect them from sun.
(a) tails (b) beaks (c) wings (d) coats
30. Rhim gazelles have big and long horns.
(a) ears (b) noses (c) arms (d) teeth
31. Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara..... .
(a) Mountains (b) forests (c) Desert (d) Street
32. Rhim gazelles eat , leaves, and plants to.
(a) fish (b) meat (c) grass (d) insects
33. Rhim gazelles have coats.
(a) brown (b) black (c) yellow-white (d) gray
34. Rhim gazelles' coat protects them from the
(a) wind (b) rain (c) snow (d) sun
35. Rhim gazelles don't need to drink a lot of
(a) milk (b) juice (c) water (d) soda
36. The fennec fox is than other foxes.
(a) larger (b) bigger (c) smaller (d) heavier
37. The fennec fox has really big
(a) paws (b) tails (c) eyes (d) ears
38. The fennec fox eats , lizards, and small mice.
(a) fruits (b) vegetables (c) plants (d) insects
38. During the day, it is in the desert.
(a) hot (b) cold (c) rainy (d) windy
39. The fennec fox loses heat from its during the day.
(a) paws (b) ears (c) tail (d) nose
40. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it
(a) cool (b) warm (c) dry (d) clean



3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**scary - makes - controls - insects - job**

Some animals like snakes and crocodiles are dangerous. But they do a very important (1) They eat (2) , birds and lizards. This (3) the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are (4) or ugly, but they are all important.

grass - fresh - eyes - look - beautiful

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. Horses eat (1) and drink fresh water. They have large, beautiful (2) They can live in the desert, but they need people to (3) after them. Horses can (4) for 25 - 30 years.

describe - hungry - paw - beak - reaches

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very (1) They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear (2) for the fish. It lifts its (3) The pelican opens its (4) It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

water - leaves - coats - horns - birds

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, (1) and plants to eat. They have big ears and long (2) They have yellow-white (3) They don't need to drink a lot of (4)

arms - scary - run - paws - fish

Bears are my favourite animals. They have strong (1) and sharp claws. They can (2) and swim. They eat fish. Bears have sharp teeth. They are (3) They eat (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at

a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

2. The fennec fox loses from its ears.

a. cold b. heat c. fur d. weight

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How heavy is the fennec fox ?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

I went to the Pyramids last weekend with my family. I rode a beautiful camel. It was interesting. Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, **strong** animals. They help us to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. This text is about

a.horses

b. camels

c. crocodiles

d. spiders

2. The underlined word "**strong**" is the opposite of the word ".....".

a.perfect

b.beautiful

c. amazing

d. weak

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How can camels help us ?

4. Why do camels have flat feet ?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. Ahmed is (**fast**) than Samy.

2. The crocodiles are (**most**) dangerous than the fish.

3. The camel is (**tall**) than the horse.

4. A fox is (**dangerous**) than a snake.

5. The horse is (**fast**) than the camel.

6. The fennec fox is smaller..... (**then**) other foxes.

7.How (**long**) is the horse ? - It is 380 kg.

8. The female eagle is bigger and (**heavy**) than the male.

9. How (**taller**) is the fennec fox? - It is 20 cm.

10. The eagle is (**big**) than the rat.

11. Pizza is..... (**delicious**) than vegetables.

12. The airplane is faster (**that**) the bicycle.

13. How..... (**taller**) is the camel? - It is 2.0m.

14. A rabbit is..... (**small**) than a dog.

15. Lions are (**most**) dangerous than cows.

16. How..... (**faster**) is the horse ? - t is 88 kph.

17. The train..... (**be**) faster than the taxi.

18. The elephant is (**big**) than the tiger.

6. Punctuate the following.

1. how long is a rhim gazelle's horn

2. the bear is stronger than the pelican
3. the pelican looks scared
4. where does the fennec fox live

PARAGRAPHS

Horses

Horses

I love horses. They are strong and fast. Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert. They need people to look after them.

أحب الخيول. إنها قوية وسريعة. الخيول لها عيون كبيرة وجميلة. تأكل العشب وتشرب الماء العذب. يمكنها العيش في الصحراء. تحتاج إلى أشخاص لرعايتها.

Bears

Bears are my favourite animals. They have strong paws and sharp claws. They can run and swim. They eat fish. Bears have sharp teeth. They are scary.

الدببة هي حيواناتي المفضلة. لها مخالب قوية وحادة. يمكنها الجري والسباحة. تأكل الأسماك. الدببة لها أسنان حادة. إنها مخيفة.

Pelican

I love to see the pelican. It has two wings and a large beak. It likes to eat juicy fish. It can fly in the sky. It catches fish from the river.

أحب رؤية البجعة. لديها جناحان ومنقار كبير. تحب أكل السمك الطري. يمكنها الطيران في السماء. تصطاد السمك من النهر.

The Fennec Fox

I love the fennec fox. It lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. It has big ears. It needs big ears to hear insects. It eats insects, lizards, and small mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram.

أحب ثعلب الفنك. يعيش في صحاري شمال إفريقيا. هو أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. له آذان كبيرة. يحتاج إلى آذان كبيرة لسمع الحشرات. يأكل الحشرات والسحالي والفقاريات الصغيرة. يزن حوالي 1 كيلوجرام.

Camels

Camels are amazing animals. They are perfect for the desert. They are strong animals. They can live for a long time without water. They have large, flat feet. They can walk on the sand. They help people to cross the desert.

الجمال حيوانات مذهلة. إنها مثالية للصحراء. إنها حيوانات قوية. يمكنها العيش لفترة طويلة دون ماء. لها أقدام كبيرة ومسطحة. يمكنها المشي على الرمال. تساعد الناس على عبور الصحراء.

Rhim Gazelles

Rhim gazelles are very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have big ears. They have long horns. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the sun. They don't need to drink a lot of water.

غزال الريم جميلة جدًا. تعيش في صحراء الصحراء الكبرى. لها آذان كبيرة. لها قرون طويلة. لها فراء أصفر-أبيض لحمايتها من الشمس. لا تحتاج إلى شرب الكثير من الماء.



Unit 3



Why do we grow plants?

ماذا نزرع النباتات ؟

Key vocabulary :

leaf	seeds	soil	tomato fruits	orange tree
ورقة شجر	بنور	تربة	ثمرة الطماطم	شجر البرتقال
rose	sunflower	bean plant	germination	daisy
وردة حمراء	زهرة دوار الشمس	نبات الفول	عملية الانبات	أقحوا / لؤلؤ
tamarisk	reed	living things	lotus flower	acacia
الطرفاء	جريد / القصب	كائنات حية	زهرة اللوتس	السنت / الصمغ العربي
habitat	agricultural	desert	rivers	lakes
موطن / بيئة	زراعي	صحراء / صحراوي	أنهار	بحيرات
polluted air	rainwater	dry	grandparents	farm
هواء ملوث	ماء المطر	جاف	الجدو الجدة	مزرعة
special	land	life	difficult	lemons
خاص / مميز	أرض	حياة	صعب	ليمون
life cycle	sunlight	get taller	sandals	papyrus
دورة حياة	ضوء الشمس	يطول	صندل	نبات البردي

Plants , trees and habitats

bean plant	orange tree	agricultural habitat
نبات الفول	شجرة البرتقال	البيئة الزراعية
tamarisk	acacia	desert habitat
الطرفاء	السنت / الصمغ العربي	البيئة الصحراوية
reed	lotus flower	rivers and lakes
قصب / جريد	زهرة اللوتس	بيئة الأنهار والبحيرات

Grammar

Superlative

لو المقارنة دي بينه تلاته أو أكثر بنسبها (تفضيل)

1. short adjectives

المصفات القصيرة

عند تفضيل واحد علي مجموعة نستخدم كلمة the ونضيف للمصفة القصيرة est

اسم + (is / are) + the + (مصفة - est)

The sunflower is the tallest flower.

The giraffe is the tallest animal.

2. Long adjectives

المصفات الطويلة

..... (مصفة طويلة) + the most + (is / are) + اسم

..... (مصفة طويلة) + the least + (is / are) + اسم

the most

الأكثر

the least

الأقل

The rose is the most beautiful flower.

The snake is the most dangerous animal.

How big ??

بنستخدمها للسؤال عن الحجم (كم الحجم)

How big is the daisy ?

- It is about 4 cm.



GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 3**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

1. Tomatoes have inside.

a. seeds

b. roots

c. leaves

d. shots

2. We can take the seeds to grow new.....

a. onions

b. bananas

c. tomatoes

d. carrots

3. We plant a seed in the and the plant grows.

a. sea

b. sand

c. soil

d. water

4. are green before they are red.

a. Onions

b. Bananas

c. Tomatoes

d. Carrots

(B)

1. Lucas lives on a in the United States.

a. village

b. city

c. farm

d. town

2. He lived with his

a. grandparents

b. friends

c. aunt

d. uncle

3. They many fruits like oranges and lemons.

a. sold

b. grew

c. made

d. did

4. They are very and they have a good life.

a. sad

b. happy

c. angry

(C)

1. Papyrus is a very plant.

a. ugly

b. special

c. nice

d. bad

2. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make.....

a. paper

b. clothes

c. food

d. tables

3. Papyrus needs a lot of water and weather to grow quickly.

a. cold

b. snowy

c. windy

d. warm

4. It in the Nile Delta near the Nile river.

a. dies

b. grows

c. waters

d. plays

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The roots grow the soil.

a above

b under

c on

d next

2. Tomatoes have.....inside.

a seeds

b roots

c shoots

d leaves

3. Let's have a tomato for lunch !

a red

b yellow

c pink

d black

4. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called.....



- a cutting b information c germination d fraction
5. The seed needs sunlight and so it can grow.
a milk b tea c coffee d water
6. Tomatoes have inside.
a seeds b roots c shoots d leaves
7. Tomatoes are before they are red.
a yellow b pink c green d black
8. Plants need from the sun.
a money b food c sunlight d soil
9. A is a place where living things live and grow.
a habitat b fur c library d cinema
10. A lotus flower grows near the It needs a lot of water.
a desert b rocks c river d mountains
11. Farmers work in the habitats
a river b desert c lakes d agricultural
12. Farmers grow for us to eat.
a clothes b toys c food d furniture
13. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of
a sunlight b water c wind d soil
14. There is not much in the desert habitat.
a sunlight b rain c sand d wind
15. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of
a sunlight b soil c water d wind
16. Bean plants grow in the habitat.
a desert b river c agricultural d lake
17. Orange trees are found in the habitat.
a city b mountains c agricultural d desert
18. In the desert habitats, you can find
a mango trees. b reed c bean plant d tamarisk
19. We can find in desert habitats.
a reed b bean plant c orange trees d acacia
20. Reed grows near the and lakes.
a mountains b desert c fields d rivers
21. When there is no water in the land, it becomes
a wet b dry c good d fresh
22. They used rainwater to the seeds.
a water b sell c bring d make
23. They used to water the seeds.



- (a) rainwater (b) seawater (c) salty water (d) ocean water
24. The city has polluted and noise.
(a) water (b) air (c) soil (d) land
25. Lucas lives on a because he likes plants and animals.
(a) city (b) forest (c) mountain (d) farm
26. The land was very There weren't any plants or water.
(a) wet (b) dry (c) fertile (d) cold
27. There were no farms. No one wanted to in this place.
(a) work (b) visit (c) live (d) travel
28. They wanted to have a so they decided to buy some land.
(a) store (b) farm (c) park (d) factory
29. We grew many fruits like and lemons.
(a) carrots (b) oranges (c) tomatoes (d) onions
30. They are very of Lucas's grandparents. they love them.
(a) sad (b) angry (c) hungry (d) proud
31. Farmers used to make the land green.
(a) machines (b) animals (c) plants (d) water
32. The shoot starts to grow the soil.
(a) in (b) behind (c) above (d) under
33. Papyrus needs a lot of to grow.
(a) water (b) coffee (c) milk (d) tea
34. is a very special plant.
(a) Paper (b) Papyrus (c) Sandals (d) Soil
35. The sunflower opens and the sun.
(a) closes (b) faces (c) puts (d) drops
36. Papyrus is famous as ancient Egyptians used it to make.....
(a) trees (b) baskets (c) hotels (d) houses
37. Ancient Egyptians made sandals and from papyrus.
(a) clothes (b) baskets (c) weapons (d) buildings
38. Papyrus needs a lot of and warm weather to grow quickly.
(a) soil (b) sunlight (c) water (d) air
39. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the River.
(a) Amazon (b) Mississippi (c) Nile (d) Yangtze
40. We plant the sunflower seed in
(a) water (b) sand (c) soil (d) rock
41. The seed germinates and it starts to grow under the soil.
(a) flowers (b) roots (c) leaves (d) shoot
42. The sunflower dies and drops its seeds to again.



- (a) sleep (b) grow (c) wither (d) wash
43. The tomato plant grows leaves, flowers, and
(a) tomatoes (b) onions (c) okra (d) potatoes

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

farmer - fruits - seeds - water

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the (1) and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and (2) it every day. The roots grow (3) the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato (4)

roots - sun - After that - germinates

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in (1) and water it. Next the seed (2) and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (3) the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 months, it opens and faces the (4)

rainwater - billion - life - green - grew

My grandparents had a farm. They (1) many fruits. They used (2) to water the plants. They needed about a (3) liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (4)

desert - lakes - water - grow

There is not much rain in the desert. Plants that live in the (1) do not need a lot of (2) Farmers can't (3) plants there. the land there is very (4)

seed - soil - red - flowers - germination

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! They have leaves and (1) Tomatoes are green before they are (2) We plant a (3) and the plant grows. That is called (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Tomatoes are delicious and important. We use tomatoes in most of our food. Everyone can grow tomatoes on their balcony. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds to grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and the plant grows. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ".....".
a. flowers b. tomato plants c. mango trees d. peas plants
2. There are Inside tomatoes.
a. roots b. flowers c. plants d. seeds

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in a sentence.

4. What color are tomatoes before they are red ?

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamarisk there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can find acacia plant and in the desert.

- a. reed b. tamarisk c. orange tree d. lotus flower

2. The text is about ".....".

- a. Habitats b. Clothes c. Festivals d. Houses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?

4. What do farmers grow in the agricultural habitat ?

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his grandparents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His grandparents are very proud of him. They use plants to make the land green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. They planted millions of

- a. seeds b. flowers c. farms d. crops

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's

- a. friends b. parents c. grandparents d. sisters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land ?

4. What did they use to water the seeds ?

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the



papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about ".....".
a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes
2. Ancient Egyptians made from papyrus.
a. sweets b. sandals c. doors d. windows

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does papyrus need to grow ?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. The daisy lives shorter (then) the rose.
2. The lion is the (dangerous) animal.
3. My city is the (nice) place to live.
4. I think the rose is the (beautiful) flower.
5. The sunflower is the (tall) flower.
6. What is the (big) animal in the world?
7. I have the (heavy) suitcase.
8. The elephant is (that) fattest animal.
9. The sunflower lives the (long).
10. The rose is the (more) beautiful flower.
11. The snake is the (dangerous) animal.
12. The sunflower is (tall) flower.
13. The cheetah is the (fast) animal.
14. The turtle is the (slow) animal.

6. Punctuate the following

1. why do plants need sunlight and water
2. which plant is the tallest
3. Papyrus is a very special plant.
4. Ancient Egyptians worked very hard.
5. Tomatoes have seeds inside.



PARAGRAPHS

Plants and Seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes. We plant a seed and water it every day. The roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

النباتات والبذور

تحتوي الطماطم على بذور بداخلها. يمكننا أخذ البذور وزراعة طماطم جديدة. نزرع بذرة ونسقيها كل يوم. تنمو الجذور تحت التربة. تكون الطماطم خضراء قبل أن تصبح حمراء.

Different Flowers

There are many different flowers such as sunflower, rose, and daisy. The sunflower is the biggest flower. The rose lives longer than the daisy. The rose is taller than the daisy. The sunflower is taller than the rose.

زهور مختلفة

هناك العديد من الزهور المختلفة مثل دوار الشمس، والورد، والأقحوان. دوار الشمس هو أكبر زهرة. الورد يعيش لفترة أطول من الأقحوان. الورد أطول من الأقحوان. دوار الشمس أطول من الورد.

Different Plant Habitats

There are many plant habitats. In agricultural habitats, farmers grow food for us to eat. Lotus flowers and reed plants grow near rivers and lakes. They need a lot of water to grow. In desert habitats, there is not much rain.

مواطن نباتات مختلفة

هناك العديد من مواطن النباتات. في المواطن الزراعية، يزرع المزارعون الطعام لنا أكله. تنمو أزهار اللوتس ونباتات القصب بالقرب من الأنهار والبحيرات. تحتاج هذه النباتات إلى الكثير من الماء لتنمو. في المواطن الصحراوية، لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار.

Papyrus

Papyrus is a very special plant. It grows in the Nile Delta. The ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They used papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water. It is a very useful plant.

نبات البردي

البردي هو نبات مميز جداً. ينمو في دلتا النيل. استخدم المصريون القدماء البردي لصنع الورق. استخدموا نباتات البردي لصنع الصنادل والسلال. يحتاج البردي إلى الكثير من الماء. إنه نبات مفيد جداً.



Unit 4



I feel good

أشعر أنني بخير

Key vocabulary :

kitchen	living room	At home	balcony	cloth
مطبخ	حجرة معيشة	في المنزل	شرفة (بلكونة)	قماش
bathroom	dining room	bedroom	street	tent
دورة مياه	حجرة الطعام	حجرة النوم	شارع	خيمة
apartment	house	houseboat	kitchen	bedroom
شقة سكنية	منزل	منزل عائمة	المطبخ	غرفة النوم
living room	bathroom	school	dinnig room	shopping mall
حجرة المعيشة	الحمام	مدرسة	حجرة الطعام	مركز تسوق
supermarket	post office	office	Places	museum
سوبر ماركت	مكتب بريد	مكتب عمل	أماكن	متحف
map	sick	couch	hospital	clothes
خريطة	مرضى	كنبة	المستشفى	الملابس
Turn left	tourist boat	summer	Sahara Desert	sahl Hasheesh
اتجه يسارا	قارب سياحي	فصل الصيف	المحراء الكبرى	سهل خشيش
safary	bazaar	Hurghada	tourist	fresh
رحلات سفاري	بازار	الغردقة	سائح	طازج
Turn right	Go straight ahead	giving directions	It's on the corner	Take the second right
اتجه يمينا	سير بشكل مستقيم	اعطاء الاتجاهات	انه في الزاوية	خذ المنعطف الثاني يمينه

Grammar

Prepositions of place

حروف جر المكان

نستخدمها لتحديد مكان شيء ما.

in front of	on	in	behind
أمام	علي	في	خلف
between	next to	under	above
بين	بجانب	تحت	أعلى

Asking about place ?

السؤال عن المكان

Where + is + مكان ؟

Where is your school?

My school is **between** the shopping mall and the hospital.

عند الإجابة نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان ...



كينج المرح



01553565385

Important Sentences

We cook food in the kitchen.

نطبخ الطعام في المطبخ.

We sleep in the bedroom.

ننام في غرفة النوم.

I talk to my family and watch television in the living room.

أتحدث مع عائلتي وأشاهد التلفاز في غرفة المعيشة.

I take a shower in the bathroom.

أستحم في الحمام.

I love to sit on the balcony; I can see the people in the street.

أحب الجلوس على الشرفة؛ أستطيع رؤية الناس في الشارع.

I eat dinner with my family in the dining room.

أتناول العشاء مع عائلتي في غرفة الطعام.

I can relax and do my homework quietly.

أستطيع الاسترخاء وأداء واجباتي المنزلية بهدوء.

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony.

غرفتي المفضلة هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة.

My aunt moved to a new apartment.

انتقلت عمتي إلى شقة جديدة.

My friend and her family live on a houseboat.

صديقتي وعائلتها يعيشون على قارب سكني.

In the desert, some people live in a tent.

في الصحراء، يعيش بعض الناس في خيمة.

A tent is made of cloth.

الخيمة مصنوعة من القماش.

I love living in a house because it is a big building.

أحب العيش في بيت لأنه مبنى كبير.

I can play outside the house with my brother and sister.

أستطيع اللعب خارج البيت مع أخي وأختي.

I live in a village next to the Nile.

أعيش في قرية بجانب النيل.

The supermarket is a place where we buy food.

السوبر ماركت هو مكان نشترى منه الطعام.

The post office is a place where we send letters.

مكتب البريد هو مكان نرسل منه الرسائل.

The school is a place where I learn.

المدرسة هي مكان أتعلم فيه.

The office is a place where my mom and dad work.

المكتب هو مكان يعمل فيه والدي.

The hospital is a place where we go when we are sick.

المستشفى هو مكان نذهب إليه عندما نكون مريضين.

The shopping mall is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.

المركز التجاري هو مكان أشتري منه الملابس والأحذية.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the summer.

صديقي شريف يعيش على قارب في الصيف.

They travel up and down the Nile.

يسافرون صعوداً وهبوطاً على النيل.

He sees many interesting places and meets people from all over the world.

يرى أماكن مثيرة للاهتمام ويلتقي بأناس من جميع أنحاء العالم.

Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river.

رأى والد شريف الطفل وقفز إلى النهر.

He swam and saved the child.

سبح وأنقذ الطفل.

I live in a city called Hurghada.

أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة.

It's in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.

تقع في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر.

It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

لديها بعض البيوت الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.

Mona works at the supermarket near my house.

موني تعمل في السوبر ماركت بالقرب من منزلي.

Mona checks that the food is fresh.

موني تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج.



GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 4**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

- Hafsa lives in.....
a. Hurghada b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Giza
- There are some beautiful houses and in Hurghada.
a. shops b. schools c. bazaars d. parks
- There are in Hurghada.
a. pyramids b. beaches c. offices d. parks
- Tourists go on in the Sahara Desert.
a. safaris b. holidays c. a trip d. journeys

(B)

- Ali lives on a / an in Hurghada.
a. houseboat b. apartment c. tent d. office
- His work on a tourist boat.
a. uncle b. parents c. aunt d. brother
- Ali goes with his parents to work in the
a. winter b. fall c. summer d. autumn
- Ali's parents travel up and down the.....
a. lake b. sea c. ocean d. Nile

(C)

- Reem lives in a small.....
a. house b. village c. city d. tent
- Her school is the park.
a. on b. next to c. above d. near
- Reem often plays in the park.
a. football b. basketball c. tennis d. volleyball
- Reem plays in the park with her.....
a. friends b. mom c. dad d. sister

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- My friend loves to live.....water. He lives on a houseboat.
(a) off (b) on (c) next (d) in
- I have a big balcony in my new.....
(a) street (b) apartment (c) tent (d) nest
- The tent is made of.....
(a) cloth (b) wood (c) glass (d) grass
- We cook food in the
(a) bedroom (b) kitchen (c) bathroom (d) living room
- People sleep in the



- (a) kitchen (b) dining room (c) bedroom (d) balcony
6. I talk to my family and watch television in the
(a) bathroom (b) living room (c) kitchen (d) bedroom
7. In the desert, some people live in a /an
(a) houseboat (b) apartment (c) tent (d) bathroom
8. I take a shower in the
(a) bedroom (b) dining room (c) living room (d) bathroom
9. I love to sit on the to see the people in the street.
(a) kitchen (b) balcony (c) tent (d) dining room
10. I eat dinner with my family in the
(a) living room (b) bedroom (c) dining room (d) bathroom
11. My friend and her family live on a because she loves living on the water.
(a) tent (b) houseboat (c) apartment (d) kitchen
12. The supermarket is a place where we
(a) send letters (b) learn (c) buy food (d) work
13. The post office is a place where we
(a) buy clothes (b) send letters (c) buy food (d) learn
14. The school is a place where I
(a) learn (b) work (c) buy clothes (d) send letters
15. The office is a place where my mom and dad
(a) buy food (b) learn (c) work (d) send letters
16. The hospital is a place where we go when we are
(a) learning (b) buying food (c) sick (d) working
17. He was sick so he went to
(a) office (b) school (c) hospital (d) supermarket
18. The shopping mall is a place where I
(a) send letters (b) learn (c) buy clothes (d) sleep
19. My friend lives a boat in the summer.
(a) under (b) front (c) on (d) between
20. My favorite room is the
(a) van (b) living room (c) face (d) boot
21. In summer, we travel and down the Nile.
(a) in (b) at (c) up (d) so
22. right. The park is on the left.
(a) Turn (b) Take (c) Talk (d) Learn
23. The hospital is the corner.
(a) of (b) front (c) on (d) under

24. I play football in the.....
(a) hospital (b) post office (c) park (d) supermarket
25. The man swam and the child.
(a) decided (b) saved (c) jumped (d) smiled
26. I bought a nice present for my mom from a in Hurghada.
(a) school (b) hospital (c) post office (d) bazaar
27. You can go on..... in the Sahara Desert.
(a) running (b) diving (c) swimming (d) safaris
28. lives in Hurghada ? - Mariam.
(a) What (b) Who (c) Does (d) When
29. About 190,000 people in Hurghada.
(a) dive (b) swim (c) run (d) live
30. Mona works at the where we buy food.
(a) supermarket (b) bank (c) post office (d) hospital
31. Mona checks that the food is
(a) expensive (b) fresh (c) old (d) salty
32. Sahl Hasheesh is in the of Hurghada.
(a) north (b) west (c) east (d) south
33. Many tourists go on safaris in the Sahara
(a) Desert (b) Lake (c) Sea (d) River
34. I bought this souvenir هدية from the
(a) bazar (b) bank (c) post office (d) hospital
35. Mona helps us. She is very
(a) smart (b) kind (c) funny (d) tall
36. There are lots of things to do in Hurghada.
(a) bad (b) tiring (c) interesting (d) ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**helpful - find - fresh - food - sells**

Mona works at the supermarket near my house. I see her every week when I buy (1) She checks the food is (2) She helps me when I can't (3) something. She is very (4) and friendly.

live - east - city- do - wash

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a (1) called Hurghada. It's in the (2) of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people (3) here. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to (4)



right - corner - where - straight - directions

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some (1)
From the corner of South Street with Lateef Street, go (2)
ahead. Take the second (3) My house is on the (3)

(airo - clothes -between-shopping mall-next

My name's Hana . I live in (1) There is a (2) in my
street. I buy (3)..... and shoes from that shopping mall. It's
(4) to my school where I learn.

street - eat - balcony - outside.

I love my house. It is big. My (1) live with us. I can play
(2)..... with my brother and sister in our garden. My favorite room is the
living room with the (3) I can see the whole (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my
family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house
and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Zain lives in a next to the Nile.

a. city

b. village

c. town

d. balcony

2. Our house is between a yellow house and a house.

a. red

b. white

c. black

d. brown

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where are the trees ?

4. What is the main idea of the text ?

I'm Zeyad. I'm very happy because today I will visit my uncle. My uncle
lives in a village next to the Nile. He lives in a house with his family. The house is
between a green house and a yellow house.

The village isn't big, but there are a lot of different places in it; a school, a
hospital, a post office and a supermarket.

The children in the village can learn in the school. When people get sick,
they can go to the hospitals. People in the village buy their food from the
supermarket. My cousins love their village because it's very quiet and there
aren't a lot of cars there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d.

1. A/An is the place where we buy our food.

a. hospital

b. school

c. supermarket

d. office

2. Zeyad's uncle lives in a

a. tent

b. Nile

c. village

d. city

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do the cousins love their village ?

4. Where can people go when they get sick ?

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room. It's **lovely** with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my friend.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.1. The underlined word "**lovely**" means

a. bad

b. ugly

c. beautiful

d. heavy

2. Hamza plays games with his.....

a. brother

b. sister

c. cousin

d. friend

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Hamza play football ?

4. What's Hamza's favorite room?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :1. The hoseboat is (**next to**) the water.2. I like sitting (**in**) the couch.3. The shopping mall is (**near**) to the supermarket and the bank.4. The school is (**next**) of the hospital.5. (**How**) is the post office ? - In front of the bank.6. The kids are playing (**above**) the park.7. The tent is (**next**) of the car.8. My school is (**on**) the shopping mall and the hospital.9. The hotel is (**next**) the post office.10. (**What**) is the armchair? - Next to the table.11. The cat is (**next**) the tree. I can't see it.12. Where is your book ? - It is (**in**) the table.13. (**Going**) straight ahead then turn right.14. My house is (**in**) the corner of the street.15. The table is (**in**) the chair and the sofa.16. (**Turns**) right and go straight on.**6. Punctuate the following**

1. what's your favorite room

2. my uncle lives in a village next to the Nile.

3. What places are there in your village?
4. I am so happy you are coming to my house today
5. do you live in an apartment or a house, ahmed ?
6. where can people go when they get sick

PARAGRAPHS

My favorite room

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I love the balcony. I can see the whole street. I watch TV in the living room. I talk to my family in the living room.

غرفتي المفضلة هي غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة. أحب الشرفة. أستطيع أن أرى الشارع كله. أشاهد التلفاز في غرفة المعيشة. أتحدث مع عائلتي في غرفة المعيشة.

My House

I live in a house. I live with my family. It's very big. We have three bedrooms. There are two bathrooms. There is a big kitchen. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We have a nice garden.

أعيش في بيت. أعيش مع عائلتي. إنه كبير جدًا. لدينا ثلاث غرف نوم. هناك حمامان. هناك مطبخ كبير. أمي تطبخ الطعام في المطبخ. لدينا حديقة جميلة.

Hurghada

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt. It is on the Red Sea. It's a big city. It has a beautiful beach. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert. It has beautiful houses and bazaars.

أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع في شرق مصر. إنها على البحر الأحمر. إنها مدينة كبيرة. لديها شاطئ جميل. يذهب السياح في رحلات السفاري في الصحراء الكبرى. لديها بيوت جميلة وبازارات.

Places in My City

I live in a city. There are many nice places in my city. There is a supermarket where I can buy food. My school is near my house. My city has a post office. It also has a hospital where I go when I am sick.

أعيش في مدينة. هناك العديد من الأماكن الجميلة في مدينتي. هناك سوبر ماركت حيث أستطيع شراء الطعام. مدرستي قريبة من منزلي. مدينتي لديها مكتب بريد. كما يوجد بها مستشفى أذهب إليه عندما أكون مريضًا.



Unit 5



Where do You work ?

أين تعمل ؟

Key vocabulary :

electrician	mechanic	plumber	bus driver	mail carrier
كهربائي	ميكانيكي	سباك	سائق أتوبيس	ساعي البريد
pipe	parcel	faucet	garbage collector	
ماسورة	طرد	حنفية	جامع القمامة	
messy	trash	wet	driving	lightning
فوضوي	قمامة	رطب / مبلل	القيادة	البرق
plug	storm	storm	electric shock	dry
فيشة	عاصفة	عاصفة	صدمة كهرباء	جاف
shop repair	safely	burn	screwdriver	measure tape
ورشة تصليح	بأمان	يحرق	مفك	شريط قياس
architect	blocks	experiment	adult	curious
مهندس معماري	مكعبات	تجربة	بالغ	شخص فضولي
patient	safety	cell phone	pros	cons
مريض	أمان	هاتف محمول	مميزات	عيوب
weather	outside	heavy	mail bag	easy
الطقس	خارج	ثقل	شنطة البريد	سهل

Grammar

Demonstrative pronouns

أسماء الإشارة

Near قريب

far بعيد

This

هذا / هذه للإشارة للمفرد القريب

That

ذلك / تلك للإشارة للمفرد البعيد

This is a book.

That is a book.

Near قريب

far بعيد

These

هؤلاء للإشارة للجمع القريب

Those

أولئك للإشارة للجمع البعيد

These are books.

Those are books.

The Past Simple tense

الماضي البسيط

الاستخدام : نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي في فترة زمنية محددة .

الأفعال المنتظمة

I used my phone yesterday.

She cooked dinner last night.

..... تكملة الجملة + مصدر الفعل (المنتظم و الغير منتظم) + فاعل

I didn't use my phone yesterday.

She did not cook dinner last night.

..... تكملة السؤال + مصدر الفعل (المنتظم و الغير منتظم) + فاعل + Did

Question : Did you use my phone yesterday?

Answer : Yes, I did.

No, I didn't.

..... تكملة السؤال + مصدر الفعل (المنتظم و الغير منتظم) + فاعل + Q. word + did

Question : When did you use your phone?

I used my phone yesterday.



Verb to be:

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد was / wasn't
We / You / They / اسم جمع were / weren't

I **was** short. I **wasn't** tall.

We **were** at school. We **weren't** at home

Key words :

الكلمات الدالة عليه

yesterday
last

أمس
الماضي

ago
once

منذ
ذات مرة

in = (سنة ماضية)

في

Important Sentences

A builder made the walls strong and safe.

بنى البنا الجدران قوية وآمنة.

An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer.

قام الكهربائي بتوصيل الكهرباء بحيث يمكنك استخدام الأنوار،

مشاهدة التلفزيون، أو القيام بواجبك على الكمبيوتر.

A plumber connected the pipes and faucets so you have water to take a shower and brush your teeth.

قام السباك بتوصيل الأنابيب والصنابير حتى يكون لديك ماء للاستحمام

وتنظيف أسنانك.

A garbage collector takes away all the garbage so you can keep your house nice and clean.

يأخذ عامل جمع القمامة كل القمامة بحيث يمكنك الحفاظ على منزلك

نظيفًا ومرتبًا.

A mail carrier delivers your letters and packages.

يقوم ساعي البريد بتسليم رسائلك وطرودك.

A mechanic fixes the car.

يقوم الميكانيكي بإصلاح السيارة.

She knows how to work safely with electricity.

هي تعرف كيف تعمل بأمان مع الكهرباء.

In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning.

في العاصفة، نرى أحيانًا وميضًا من البرق.

If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies.

إذا حصلنا على صدمة كهربائية، لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا.

Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.

لا تلمس أي شيء كهربائي بيديك مبللتين.

Never put anything into a socket; only use plugs.

لا تضع أي شيء في المقبس؛ استخدم المقابس فقط.

She loved to experiment.

كانت تحب التجارب.

She was very curious.

كانت فضولية جدًا.

When Talia was a baby, she played with blocks.

عندما كانت تاليا طفلة، كانت تلعب بالكتل.

Talia made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll.

صنعت تاليا بيتًا صغيرًا للكلبها وسريرًا لدمية أختها.

Amir played, helped, and explained things all the time.

كان أمير يلعب، يساعد، ويشرح الأشياء طوال الوقت.

Mail carriers walk all day.

يمشي سعاة البريد طوال اليوم.

Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.

يحصل سعاة البريد على الكثير من التمارين.

Mail carriers are outside, and it's great when the weather is good.

يكون سعاة البريد في الخارج، وهذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس جيدًا.

Mail carriers are outside all day, and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or very cold.

يكون سعاة البريد في الخارج طوال اليوم، وهذا ليس ممتعًا عندما يكون

الطقس حارًا جدًا أو باردًا جدًا.

The mail bag is very heavy.

حقيرة البريد ثقيلة جدًا.

Mail carriers wake up very early.

يستيقظ سعاة البريد مبكرًا جدًا.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 5**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

1. Amira is a/an.....

- a. driver b. electrician c. teacher d. vet

2. She studied and practiced for years.

- a. one b. two c. three d. four

3. She said that electricity is very

- a. safe b. dangerous c. nice d. good

4. She knows how to work with electricity.

- a. safely b. carelessly c. badly d. sadly

(B)

1. All the people and jobs are very for us.

- a. terrible b. sad c. important d. bad

2. The cleaners keep our city.....

- a. clean b. dirty c. ugly d. terrible

3. The connect the pipes to help us get water.

- a. electricians b. plumber c. teacher d. driver

4. The connect electricity so we can use the lights.

- a. electricians b. plumber c. teacher d. driver

(C)

1. Amir was always very and he was never angry

- a. patient b. curious c. happy d. sad

2. He liked people.

- a. watching b. helping c. eating d. washing

3. He things all the time.

- a. explained b. ignored c. played d. loved

4. Amir is a/an now and all people like him.

- a. officer b. adult c. artist d. teacher

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I want to be a to fix cars.

- a** doctor **b** plumber **c** mechanic **d** mail carrier

2. When dad was young, he wanted to be a / an to connect electricity.

- a** mail carrier **b** bus driver **c** mail carrier **d** electrician

3. If you have a problem with pipes in your house, you need a/an

- a** electrician **b** mail carrier **c** bus driver **d** plumber

4. A mail carrier delivers

- a** parcels **b** cars **c** trash **d** faucets

5. In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of

- a** electricity **b** lightning **c** shock **d** cars

6. I should study hard and before becoming an electrician.
(a) sleep (b) play (c) practice (d) don't care
7. Electricity is very useful, but it is also very.....
(a) safe (b) nice (c) boring (d) dangerous
8. Never touch anything electrical with
(a) dry hands (b) gloves (c) wet hands (d) screwdriver
9. Electricity is very dangerous, and it can
(a) make noise (b) be fun (c) make us happy (d) burn us
10. Electricity travels very fast, close to the speed of
(a) sound (b) light (c) water (d) wind
11. Never put anything into a socket; only use
(a) broken wires (b) wet tools (c) plugs (d) fingers
12. She loved to experiment. She was very.....
(a) sad (b) angry (c) curious (d) lazy
13. She carried a.....to open old radios.
(a) socket (b) screwdriver (c) tape measure (d) pencil
14. Talia played with..... She put one block on top of another.
(a) balls (b) blocks (c) spoons (d) knives
15. She always carried a..... , and she opened old radios and cell phones.
(a) screwdriver (b) tape measure (c) hammer (d) phone
16. He didn't get angry with his little brothers. He is very
(a) patient (b) sad (c) bad (d) mad
17. The electricians connect so that we can use lights.
(a) bus (b) bag (c) garbage (d) electricity
18. The garbage collectors take away our
(a) garbage (b) water (c) pipes (d) food
19. Mailcarriers wake upvery early.
(a) early (b) late (c) at night (d) in the evening
20. connect the pipes so that we have water.
(a) Electricians (b) Mechanics (c) Cleaners (d) Plumbers
21. connect electricity so that we can use lights.
(a) Plumbers (b) Cleaners (c) Electricians (d) Bus drivers
22. keep the school clean.
(a) Plumbers (b) Cleaners (c) Bus drivers (d) Garbage collectors
23. bring the children to school.
(a) Bus drivers (b) Electricians (c) Cleaners (d) Plumbers
24. take away our garbage.
(a) Bus drivers (b) Cleaners (c) Plumbers (d) Garbage collectors

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**bus driver - garbog - lights - pipes - electrician**

We have a big house. A (1) collector takes away all garbage. An (2) connects electricity so we can use lights. A plumber connects the (3) so we can have water. Every day the (4) takes us to school. We like our house very much.

house - doll - job - put - older

When Dina was a baby, she played with blocks. She (1) one block on top of another. When she was (2), she started making things. She made a little (3) for her dog. Also she made a bed for her sister's (4)

speed - dry - electricity - wet - electrician

I'm Maryam. I'm an electrician. I studied and practiced for three years before I became an (1) I know how to work safely with (2) Electricity travels very fast, close to the (3) of light. Electricity is very dangerous. Make sure your hands are (4) before you touch anything electrical.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people around us work hard to help us. Together, we help each other. For example, a plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you have water. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean. A bus driver drives to many different places and helps lots of people.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A helps us to have water.

- a. plumber b. cleaner c. collector d. vet

2. A plumber connects the and faucets.

- a. cars b. pipes c. lights d. letters

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the garbage collector do ?

4. What does the bus driver do ?

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy. They are very tired when they come back home.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Mail carriers can get a lot of because they walk all the day.

- a. electricity b. cars c. exercise d. bags



2. The heavy bag is one of the of being a mail carrier.

- a. pros b. cons c. hand d. games

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where are the mail carriers all day?

4. Why are mail carriers very tired when they come back home?

Noha and Amir are my cousins. They are different. Noha is an electrician. When Noha was a child, she loved to experiment. Noha was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver and she opened old radios, cell phones and anything that had electricity. She learned about safety with electricity. My cousin Amir is a teacher. He is always patient. When Amir was young, he liked helping people. Amir never gets angry with his students. He always explains things for his students.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Noha learned about with electricity.

- a. blocks b. safety c. animals d. shock

2. The underlined word "young" means

- a. angry b. calm c. lazy d. little

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Noha carry?

4. What did Amir like when he was young?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. (These) map will help us.

2. My father bought (that) toys for me.

3. (That) shoes are very big.

4. (These) car is very expensive.

5. Can you paint (this) room?

6. (That) mountains are very high.

7. (This) pens are blue.

8. (These) flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year.

9. (That) are my friends.

10. Maryam (love) to do experiments when she was young.

11. We (study) English yesterday.

12. They (wash) the car yesterday.

13. Maryam didn't (loved) to do experiments.

14. We (don't) study English yesterday.

15. They didn't (washing) the car.

16. (Do) Maryam study English yesterday?

17. What (does) Maryam love to do?

18. When did Hana (went) to school?

19. I found (these) cat in the park.
 20. Did you (made) a house for your sister's doll?
 21. He (go) to Paris last weekend.
 22. She always (carry) a pencil when she was little.
 23. When my brother (be) a child, he played with toys.
 24. What (do) you like to play with when you were little?
 25. Sara (were) happy yesterday.

6. Punctuate the following.

1. what's Maryam's job
2. it is not easy to become an electrician
3. what does the garbage collector do
4. many people around us work hard to help us

PARAGRAPHS

How workers help us every day

All jobs are good. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The bus drivers bring children to school. The mail carriers are delivering letters. We need garbage collectors to take away our trash. The electricians connect electricity.

كيف يساعدنا العمال كل يوم

جميع الوظائف جيدة. يقوم السباكون بتوصيل الأنابيب حتى يكون لدينا ماء. يجلب سائقو الحافلات الأطفال إلى المدرسة. يقوم سعاة البريد بتوصيل الرسائل. نحتاج إلى عمال النظافة لجمع القمامة. يقوم الكهربائيون بتوصيل الكهرباء.

Mail carriers

Mail carriers deliver letters. They are outside all day. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. It is not an easy job. The mail bag is very heavy. They wake up very early.

سعاة البريد

يقوم سعاة البريد بتوصيل الرسائل. يكونون خارج المنزل طوال اليوم. يمشي سعاة البريد طوال اليوم ويحصلون على الكثير من التمارين. ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة البريد ثقيلة جدًا. يستيقظون في وقت مبكر جدًا.

Your favorite job

My favorite job is an electrician. When I was a child, I loved to experiment. I always carry a screwdriver. I open old radios and cell phones. I learn about safety with electricity.

وظيفتي المفضلة هي كهربائي. عندما كنت طفلًا، كنت أحب التجارب. أحمل دائمًا مفك براغي. أفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة والهواتف المحمولة. أتعلم عن السلامة مع الكهرباء.

Electricity

Electricity is very useful, but it is also dangerous. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies. It can burn us. We mustn't touch anything electrical with wet hands. Electricity travels very fast.

الكهرباء مفيدة جدًا، لكنها أيضًا خطيرة. إذا تعرضنا للصدمة الكهربائية، لا يمكننا التحكم في أجسادنا. يمكنه أن يحرقنا. يجب ألا نلمس أي شيء كهربائي بأيدي مبللة. تسافر الكهرباء بسرعة كبيرة.

Unit 6



What do you do?

ماذا تفعل ؟

Key vocabulary :

fisherman	fishing	farmer	farming	restaurant
مباد سمك	الميد	فلاح	الزراعة	مطعم
guide	librarian	education	tourism industry	hotel
مرشد سياحي	مكتبي / أمين المكتبة	التعليم	مناحة السياحة	فندق
energy	money	renewable	non-renewable	wood
طاقة	نقود	متجدد	غير متجدد	خشب
fresh	disappointed	fish van	engine	lovely
طازج	محبط	شاحنة بيع الاسماك	محرك	جميل / محبوب
trash	surprising	patient	shelf	exciting
قمامة	مفاجئ / مدهش	مريض	رف	مثير / رائع

Grammar

The prefix "dis"

هي عبارة عن مجموعة حروف تضاف لأول الكلمة (بادئة) لتعطي معنى (ليس)

disagree	not agree	يرفض	dislike	not like	لا يحب
disobey	not obey	يعصي	disappear	not appear	يختفي

He dislike football. = He doesn't like football.

obey	يطيع	disobey	يرفض الطاعة / يعصي
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض
like	يحب	dislike	لا يحب / يكره
connect	يتصل	disconnect	dr'u hghjwhg

Don't + inf مصدر الفعل

Don't worry.

لا تقلق

Don't cut down trees.

لا تقطع الأشجار

OutStanding



GENERAL EXERCISES ON UNIT 6**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.****(A)**

- My uncle is good at looking after the.....
a. plants b. chickens c. people d. animals
- My uncle grows.....
a. onions b. carrots c. fruits d. tomatoes
- Then in....., he sends the fruit to the factory.
a. July b. June c. October d. May
- He sells some of them at the.....
a. market b. street c. school d. hospital

(B)

- There's an old in my village.
a. fisherman b. electrician c. doctor d. plumber
- He sells.....
a. books b. cars c. vegetables d. fish
- He his job..
a. hates b. doesn't like c. dislike d. likes
- He always drives his old around the city.
a. bus b. bike c. van d. train

(C)

- Being a teacher is not.....
a. easy b. sad c. hard d. fun
- For a teacher, every day is
a. the same b. alike c. different d. nice
- always ask surprising questions.
a. Students b. People c. Managers d. Teachers
- They need to be very.....
a. patient b. angry c. hungry d. bad

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- A/An works on the sea.
a) librarian b) guide c) engineer d) fisherman
- A helps us find the information in the library.
a) farmer b) fisherman c) guide d) librarian
- A farmer looks the trees all year.
a) on b) in c) after d) to
- My uncle wasn't at home. He went on his boat.
a) out b) in c) for d) to
- The person who looks after all the books is called a



- (a) librarian (b) fisherman (c) guide (d) farmer
6. The person who catches fish is called a
(a) guide (b) fisherman (c) librarian (d) farmer
7. The person who tells the tourists lots of interesting information is called a....
(a) librarian (b) guide (c) fisherman (d) farmer
8. The person who grows plants is called a
(a) guide (b) fisherman (c) librarian (d) farmer
9. The fisherman goes out on his boat to catch fresh
(a) fish (b) dogs (c) cats (d) goats
10. I'm a I work in a school library.
(a) librarian (b) fisherman (c) guide (d) farmer
11. A works in the tourism industry.
(a) guide (b) fisherman (c) librarian (d) farmer
12. I'm a and I grow and look after plants and trees.
(a) librarian (b) fisherman (c) guide (d) farmer
13. A fisherman goes out on his boat and catches fish.
(a) fisherman (b) guide (c) librarian (d) farmer
14. He is down trees to sell the wood.
(a) looking (b) cutting (c) washing (d) running
15. Malak looked out of the
(a) table (b) chair (c) sofa (d) window
16. worry, you will arrive early.
(a) Didn't (b) Doesn't (c) Don't (d) Doing
17. Plant the seed and it will be a
(a) tree (b) window (c) door (d) table
18. The mechanic can.....the engine.
(a) break (b) fix (c) get (d) come
19. My dad was a and he taught me how to fix cars
(a) mechanic (b) teacher (c) doctor (d) engineer
20. My grandpa taught me all..... cars.
(a) of (b) around (c) about (d) off
21. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and.....
(a) happy (b) good (c) disappointed (d) pleased
22. It was in the sun.
(a) snowy (b) cold (c) icy (d) hot
23. We start the to drive the car.
(a) engine (b) mp3 player (c) phone (d) tablet
24. The old fisherman has fish. It is awesome
(a) ugly (b) old (c) bad (d) fresh

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**wind - can - renewable - Gas - Solar energy**

There are many forms of energy. Some forms are (1) Renewable energy (2) grow again or never run out. Also there is non-renewable energy. It can't grow again. The (3) is a kind of renewable energy. (4) and oil are non-renewable.

supermarket - send - play - pick- oranges

I'm a farmer. I grow (1) I (2) the fruit. I (3) a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the (4)

patient - different - change - food - job

I want to be a teacher. For me, it's the best (1) in the world. For a teacher, every day is (2) Students always ask surprising questions. A teacher can (3) their students' lives. Teachers need to be very (4)

interesting - electricity - books - information - library

I'm Maryam. I like books very much. I'm a librarian. I work in a school (1) It's my job to look after all the (2) I buy lots of new books. I help children find the (3) they need. It is an (4) job for me. I like it.

disappointed - engine - fish - van - problem

The old fisherman drives around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his (1) He was sad and (2) A mechanic looked at the old van's (3) It was a simple (4) He fixed his van.

seed - wood - sad - happy - cut down

Samia needed money. She (1) her mango tree. She sold the (2) She was (3) Now, there is no mango tree and no more wood. Her sister gave her a (4) to plant a new tree.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. A teacher can change their students' lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The teacher's job is not

- a. surprising b. quiet c. easy d. difficult

2. Teachers need to think

- a. quickly b. slowly c. safely d. easily



B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can a teacher change ?

4. What do students always ask ?

I'm Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He has a boat. Every morning, he goes to the Nile to catch fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the market. He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. The text tells us about.

a. a fisherman b. a boat c. fish d. a market

2. The underlined word "sells" is the opposite of

a. buys b. sends c. catches d. goes

B. Read and answer the following questions :

3. Where does Hussein's uncle go in the morning ?

4. Why does Hussein's uncle like his job ?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets :

1. Ahmed likes football, but he (likes) tennis.

2. During the day, The moon (appears) in the sky.

3. A good girl should (disobey) her parents.

4. Ali thinks that English is hard, but I (agree) with him.

5. He doesn't like chicken. This means he (likes) chicken.

6. The mechanic can (fixes) the engine.

7. She (likes) ice cream. She doesn't eat it.

8. (comes) and get your lovely fish.

6. Punctuate the following

1. what do you do, ahmed ?

2. i want to be a teacher

3. is being a teacher an important job

4. there's an old fisherman in my village

PARAGRAPHS

A farmer / Mango trees

My dad is a farmer. He grows oranges. He looks after the trees. He gives them water and nutrients. He picks the fruit. He sends a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

والدي مزارع. يزرع البرتقال. يعتني بالأشجار. يعطيها الماء والمغذيات. يقطف الثمار. يرسل الكثير من الثمار إلى المصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال.

A fisherman's job

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village. He likes his job. He has fun. He sells fresh fish. My mom always buys fish from him.

هناك مبيد كبير السن في قريتي. يقود سيارته حول القرية. يحب وظيفته. يستمتع بها. يبيع السمك الطازج. أمي تشتري السمك منه دائماً.

The guide

I want to be a guide. The guide works in the tourism industry. People come to our country. The guide explains the history. He tells lots of interesting information. The guide works outside. This is an interesting job.

أريد أن أكون مرشداً. يعمل المرشد في صناعة السياحة. يأتي الناس إلى بلدنا. يشرح المرشد التاريخ. يقدم الكثير من المعلومات الشيقة. يعمل المرشد في الخارج. هذه وظيفة ممتعة.

A librarian

My mother is a librarian. She works in a school library and looks after all the books. She buys lots of new books. She helps children find the information. She likes her job.

أمي أمينة مكتبة. تعمل في مكتبة المدرسة وتعتني بجميع الكتب. تشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة. تساعد الأطفال في العثور على المعلومات. تحب وظيفتها.

A teacher

A teacher's job is not easy. For a teacher every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers can change their students' lives. Teachers need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day.

وظيفة المعلم ليست سهلة. كل يوم يختلف عن الآخر بالنسبة للمعلم. الطلاب دائماً يطرحون أسئلة مفاجئة. يمكن للمعلم تغيير حياة طلابهم. يحتاج المعلمون إلى أن يكونوا صبورين جداً. يعملون لساعات طويلة كل يوم.



SAMPLE TEST 1

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Samy was always very and he was never angry.

a. happy b. curious c. patient d. sad

2. He liked to all the people around him.

a. watch b. help c. eat d. wash

3. He things all the time.

a. explained b. ignored c. played d. loved

4. Samy is a/an now and all people him.

a. officer b. adult c. artist d. teacher

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The fennec fox lives in the

a. deserts b. rivers c. lakes d. seas

2. They used rainwater to the seeds.

a. water b. sell c. bring d. make

3. We sleep in the at home.

a. bedroom b. living room c. bathroom d. garden

4. Electricity travels very, close to the speed of light.

a. slowly b. sadly c. fast d. well

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fixed - drives - fish - van - disappointed

My uncle is an old fisherman. He (1) around the village in on old van. One day, he couldn't start his (2) He was sad and (3) A mechanic looked at the old van's engine. It was a simple problem. He (4) his van.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Ancient Egyptians were amazing people. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. The Ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians made from papyrus.

a. sweets b. sandals c. doors d. windows

2. This text is about ".....".

a. Lotus b. Rose c. Papyrus d. Tomatoes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4. What does papyrus need to grow ?



5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Maryam (likes) ice cream. She doesn't eat it.
2. We (painted) our house this means we painted it again.
3. The turtle is the (slow) animal.
4. The cat is (next) the tree. I can't see it.

6. Punctuate the following

1. the bear is stronger than the pelican

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Your house

Guiding elements:

- bedroom

- kitchen

SAMPLE TEST 2

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egyptian Farmers produce things.
a. bad b. good c. a few d. many
2. They plant..... and fruits.
a. trees b. flowers c. vegetables d. grass
3. They plant tomatoes and potatoes.
a. lettuce b. onions c. carrots d. trees
4. They also raise.....
a. chickens b. cows c. dogs d. donkeys

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Farmers like spiders. They are very
a. helpful b. bad c. small d. ugly
2. Acacia grows in the habitat.
a. desert b. agricultural c. lake d. river
3. He was sick so he went to
a. supermarket b. school c. hospital d. office
4. Mail carriers are outside and it's.....when the weather is good.
a. great b. bad c. not good d. ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bus driver - garbage - lights - pipes - electrician

We live in a big house. A lot of people help us. A (1) collector takes away all garbage. An (2) connects electricity, so we can use lights. A plumber connects the (3) so we can have water. Every day the (4) takes us to school.

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, lizards and small mice. It weighs around 1 kilogram. During the day, it's hot in the desert. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears. At night it is cold. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- The fennec fox loses from its ears.
a. cold b. heat c. fur d. weight
- The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at
a. morning b. afternoon c. night d. sunshine

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4. How heavy is the fennec fox ?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- My homework has a lot of mistakes. I need to (do) it.
- The rose is the (more) beautiful flower.
- (How) is the post office ? - In front of the bank.
- (These) car is very expensive.

6. Punctuate the following

- there's an old fisherman in my village

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:**Your favourite job****Guiding elements:**

- What do you do in this job?
- Where do you work?

SAMPLE TEST 3**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Hamza lives in
a. Hurghada b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Giza
- There are some beautiful houses and in Hurghada.
a. shops b. schools c. bazaars d. parks
- There are in Hurghada.
a. pyramids b. beaches c. offices d. parks
- Tourists go on in the Sahara Desert.
a. safaris b. holidays c. a trip d. journeys



2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Egyptian farmerschickens.

a. give b. play c. raise d. build

2. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of

a. sand b. water c. food d. electricity

3. Horses like to drink.....water.

a. sweet b. dirty c. fresh d. salt

4. I do a lot of sport at school. I am

a. healthy b. unhealthy c. bad d. weak

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

garden - palace - honest - lie - flowers

Once upon a time, there was a rich emperor. He and his family lived in a (1)..... . He was (2) and all people loved him. He had a very beautiful (3) and it was full of many (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamarisk there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can find acacia plant and in the desert.

a. reed b. tamarisk c. orange tree d. lotus flower

2. The text is about ".....".

a. Habitats b. Clothes c. Festivals d. Houses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes ?

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What is the..... (big) animal in the world?

2. Maryam didn't (loved) to do experiments.

3. My school is (on) the shopping mall and the hospital.

4. The sunflower lives the (long).

6. Punctuate the following

1. why do plants need sunlight and water

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Tomato plant



Guiding elements:

- seeds

- green

SAMPLE TEST 4**1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. are beautiful, strong animals.

a. Camels

b. Horses

c. Foxes

d. Donkeys

2. Camels can carry people to cross the.....

a. river

b. desert

c. sea

d. lake

3. Camels' milk is

a. delicious

b. ugly

c. bad

d. terrible

4. We use camels' to make clothes.

a. legs

b. fur

c. eyes

d. tails

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. Horses eat.....and drink fresh water.

a. meat

b. grass

c. sand

d. fish

2. Tomatoes are green they are red.

a. after

b. before

c. when

d. at

3. The is a place where we send letters.

a. post office

b. office

c. school

d. hospital

4. Pros are things.

a. good

b. bad

c. not good

d. ugly

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**delicious - farmers - Doctors - grow - fruits**

We produce many foods in Egypt. We (1) rice, onions, and tomatoes.

(2) grow many things we eat every day. Egypt produces (3)like mangoes, bananas, and watermelons. Food is (4)

4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mailcarriers are outside all day. This is **great** when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy. They are very tired when they come back home.

A. Choose the correct answer.1. The word "**great**" means

a. good

b. bad

c. ugly

d. terrible

2. The heavy bag is one of the of being a mailcarrier.

a. pros

b. cons

c. hand

d. games

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4. Where are the mail carriers all day?



5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Sara (were) happy yesterday.
2. I have the (heavy) suitcase.
3. The airplane is (that) the bicycle.
4. He speaks English, (and) he can't speak Chinese.

6. Punctuate the following

1. Ahmed and maryam love animals

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

Guiding elements: **Different habitats**
- desert - agricultural

SAMPLE TEST 5

1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To be a teacher isn't
a. easy b. sad c. hard d. fun
2. always ask surprising questions.
a. Students b. People c. Managers d. Teachers
3. Teachers can their students' lives.
a. damage b. eat c. spiol d. waste
4. Teachers need to be very.....
a. patient b. angry c. hungry d. bad

2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d.

1. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it.....
a. warm b. cold c. sad d. tall
2. A/An works on the sea.
a. librarian b. guide c. engineer d. fisherman
3. My friend lives on water. He lives on a.....
a. rock b. tent c. houseboat d. school
4. Tomatoes have.....inside.
a. roots b. seeds c. shoots d. leaves

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

reaches - hungry - describe - paw - beak

There are a pelican and a bear in the middle of the river. They are very (1)..... . They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear (2) for the fish. It lifts its (3) The pelican opens its (4) It is ready to take the fish out of the water.



4. Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! My name is Youssef. I want to tell you about myself. I live in a house. My favorite room is the living room. It's **lovely** with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother outside. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my friends in our garden.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Youssef plays games with his.....

a. brother

b. sister

c. cousin

d. friend

2. The underlined word "**lovely**" means

a. bad

b. ugly

c. beautiful

d. heavy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Youssef play football ?

4. What's Youssef 's favorite room?

5. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We (study) English yesterday.

2. The lion is the (dangerous) animal.

3. The school is (next) of the hospital.

4. I want to go swimming, (and) it is raining.

6. Punctuate the following

1. The palace is where an emperor lives.

7. Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

(camels

Guiding elements:

- flat feet

- desert

OutStanding

Mr Sayed Nagah

01553565385



01553565385

54

OutStanding

LISTENING SCRIPT

Unit 1

A) Farmers are very **important** for us. Farmers **produce** food for us to eat. They grow **tomatoes** and onions. They raise **chickens** to get eggs.

B) **Plants** are living things. Some plants are **big** and some are small. Plants need water to **grow**. We need to **take care of** plants.

C) Egyptian Farmers produce **many** things. They plant **vegetables** and fruits. They plant tomatoes, **onions** and potatoes. They also raise **chickens**.

Unit 2

A) The fennec fox lives in the **desert**. The fennec fox is **smaller** than other foxes. The fennec fox needs **big** ears to hear insects. It loses heat from its **ears**.

B) The bear and the pelican are in the **river**. They are looking at a big **juicy** fish. The **pelican** says sadly, "I'm sorry". The **bear** is bear and bigger than the pelican.

C) Some **animals** live in our country. The **crocodile** is huge and scary. Spiders are very **helpful**. Farmers like spiders.

Unit 3

A) Tomatoes have **seeds** inside. We can take the seeds to grow new **tomatoes**. We plant a seed in the **soil** and the plant grows. **Tomatoes** are green before they are red.

B) Lucas lives on a **farm** in the United States. He lived with his **grandparents**. They **grew** many fruits like oranges and lemons. They are very **happy** and they have a good life.

C) Papyrus is a very **special** plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make **paper**. Papyrus needs a lot of water and **warm** weather to grow quickly. It **grows** in the Nile Delta near the Nile river.

Unit 4

A) Hafsa lives in **Hurghada**. There are some beautiful houses and **bazaars** in Hurghada. There are **beaches** in Hurghada. Tourists go on **safaris** in the Sahara Desert.

B) Ali lives on a **houseboat** in Hurghada. His **parents** work on a tourist boat. Ali goes with his parents to work in the **summer**. Ali's parents travel up and down the **Nile**.

C) Reem lives in a small **village**. Her school is

next to the park. Reem often plays **football** in the park. Reem plays in the park with her **friend**.

Unit 5

A) Amira is an **electrician**. She studied and practiced for **three** years. She said that electricity is very **dangerous**. She knows how to work **safely** with electricity.

B) All the people and jobs are very **important** for us. The cleaners keep our city **clean**. The **plumber** connect the pipes to help us get water. The **electrician** connect electricity so we can use th lights.

C) Amir was always very **patient** and he was never angry. He liked **helping** people. He **explained** things all the time. Amir is an **adult** now and all people him.

Unit 6

A) My uncle is good at looking after the **plants**. My uncle grows **fruits**. Then in **October**, he sends the fruit to the factory. He sells some of them at the **market**.

B) There's an old **fisherman** in my village. He sells **fish**. He **likes** his job. He always drives his old **van** around the city.

C) Being a teacher is not **easy**. For a teacher, every day is **different**. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to be very **patient**.

Sample Test 1 Samy was always very patient and he was never angry. He liked to help all the people around him. He explained things all the time. Samy is an adult now and all people him.

Sample Test 2 Egyptian Farmers produce many things. They plant vegetables and fruits. They plant tomatoes, onions and potatoes. They also raise chickens.

Sample Test 3 Hamza lives in Hurghada. There are some beautiful houses and bazaars in Hurghada. There are beaches in Hurghada. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.

Sample Test 4 Camels are beautiful, strong animals. Camels can carry people to cross the desert. Camels' milk is delicious. We use camels' fur to make clothes.

Sample Test 5 To be a teacher isn't easy. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers can change their students' lives. Teachers need to be very patient.

حمل الآن

مجاناً وحصرياً

المراجعة رقم (5)

الترم الاول



(1) Unit one "I feel good"

(1) Lesson one "food and drinks"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The food looks I like it.
 (a) bad (b) cold (c) delicious (d) dirty
2. Let's our lunch.
 (a) eats (b) eat (c) eating (d) ate
3. Egyptians farmers rice in Egypt.
 (a) raise (b) grow (c) think (d) play
4. Farmers grow many fruits like
 (a) mangoes (b) beans (c) carrots (d) rice
5. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and in Egypt.
 (a) grapes (b) onions (c) watermelon (d) mangoes
6. Egyptian farmers many things you can see on this table.
 (a) think (b) raise (c) produce (d) look
7. Farmers chickens in Egypt.
 (a) grow (b) raise (c) make (d) plant
8. We rice in Egypt.
 (a) raise (b) grow (c) think (d) look
9. Apples and are my favourite fruits.
 (a) mangoes (b) rice (c) onions (d) potatoes
10. I eat chicken and rice for
 (a) dinner (b) breakfast (c) lunch (d) snack
11. Egyptian produce many foods for us.
 (a) farmers (b) doctors (c) teachers (d) nurses
12. Habiba always drinks in the morning. It's healthy.
 (a) onions (b) potatoes (c) animals (d) milk
13. I like very much. We make sugar out of it. (المشروبات - 2022)
 (a) onions (b) watermelon (c) sugarcane (d) chickens
14. I eat in the morning. (الغذاء - 2024)
 (a) breakfast (b) lunch (c) dinner (d) juice
15. Mangoes and are my favourite fruits.
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) rice (d) potatoes
16. We grow in Egypt. (المشروبات - 2022)
 (a) bike (b) rice (c) car (d) bus
17. Farmers grow rice and They help us eat good food. (الغذاء - 2022)
 (a) potatoes (b) chairs (c) chickens (d) animals
18. Mom cooks special food for us. Yum! It looks
 (a) bad (b) unhealthy (c) delicious (d) cold
19. We made chips from
 (a) bananas (b) mangoes (c) potatoes (d) tomatoes

20. I drink a glass of for breakfast.
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) milk (d) rice
21. We chickens to get fresh eggs.
 (a) raise (b) read (c) look (d) grow
22. Watermelon and are my favorite fruits.
 (a) onions (b) grapes (c) potatoes (d) rice
23. grow vegetables for us to eat.
 (a) Engineers (b) Farmers (c) Doctors (d) Vets
24. Breakfast is my favourite
 (a) job (b) meal (c) clothes (d) place
25. Orange juice is my favourite
 (a) book (b) sport (c) food (d) drink
26. and mangoes are my favourite fruits.
 (a) Watermelon (b) Rice (c) Milk (d) Onions
27. He is a farmer. He rice on his farm.
 (a) raises (b) grows (c) comes (d) drinks
28. Farmers many vegetables every year.
 (a) happen (b) practice (c) talk (d) produce
29. Domiati cheese is very
 (a) tall (b) wrong (c) famous (d) sad
30. Our houses is so old. We need to it. (اسكندريه - 2024)
 (a) repaint (b) recook (c) reread (d) rewrite
31. are kinds of vegetables.
 (a) Oranges (b) Tomatoes (c) Apples (d) Grapes
32. Lunch is mom made some special food for us.
 (a) ready (b) dirty (c) hungry (d) happy

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

raise – grow – produce – shoot – country

(الرفقيليخ - 2024)

lots of the food we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers (1) rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers (2) chickens, sheep, cows, goats, and many other animals. Farmers (3) many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the time we sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Kareem's family live?

2. Why does Kareem like lunch?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We have meals every day.
 (a) two (b) one (c) four (d) three
4. We are having potatoes and chicken for today.
 (a) breakfast (b) lunch (c) dinner (d) break

➔ Punctate the following:

1. egyptian farmers produce many things

2. i made special food for us

3. we grow rice in egypt.

(2) Lesson two "I'm healthy"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Fruits are and healthy.
 Ⓐ salty Ⓑ sweet Ⓒ bad Ⓓ busy
- He is a/an He is doing some research about plants.
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ engineer Ⓒ scientist Ⓓ guide
- Mom uses bananas and milk to make delicious bananas
 Ⓐ milkshake Ⓑ tea Ⓒ burgers Ⓓ soup
- I don't drink cola because it is
 Ⓐ healthy Ⓑ unhealthy Ⓒ good Ⓓ delicious
- My dad is a/an and he likes looking at plants and animals.
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ basketball player Ⓒ scientist Ⓓ interviewer
- I don't eat It's unhealthy.
 Ⓐ fruits Ⓑ candy Ⓒ bananas Ⓓ vegetables
- She's an active player. She three times a week.
 Ⓐ walks Ⓑ goes Ⓒ practices Ⓓ makes
- Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is
 Ⓐ healthy Ⓑ scary Ⓒ tired Ⓓ unhealthy
- I think I'm I like to play basketball.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ sick Ⓒ healthy Ⓓ unhealthy

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- I want to play football, (and) my leg hurts.
- The farmers grow rice, tomatoes (but) potatoes in Egypt.
- I like burgers, (and) I only eat one a week.
- I like to play football (but) tennis.
- I don't eat candy, (and) I eat fruit.
- He can speak English (or) Arabic.
- I eat vegetables (but) I exercise.
- I want to play football, (and) I'm ill.
- I practice basketball (but) football.
- I like chocolate (but) ice cream.
- Nabil speaks English, (and) he can't speak Chinese.
- I want to go swimming, (and) it is raining.
- After school, I do my homework (because) I eat dinner.
- I practice basketball (or) I walk home from school every day.
- I don't drink cola, (or) I drink fresh juice.
- I want to be healthy, (and) I don't like to eat vegetables.
- Cats are cute (but) quiet.
- I like reading stories (but) I like watching films, too.
- Your cat is small, (so) my cat is big.
- She is a tour guide (but) she likes reading about museums.
- I can speak English (or) French.
- We wash the potatoes (but) cut them into pieces.
- I like chocolate ice cream, (or) my sister likes vanilla.

24. Moaz has a car, (**and**) he likes waking to his office.
 25. I have one brother (**but**) two sisters.
 26. She wants to buy a car, (**and**) she doesn't have enough money.
 27. Mona sleeps early (**but**) wakes up early every day.
 28. Mazen is a good player, (**and**) he needs to practice more.
 29. They don't eat candy (**but**) they don't like cola.
 30. I studied hard, (**and**) I didn't pass the exam.
 31. She loves pizza, (**and**) she doesn't eat it.
 32. The kids drink water (**but**) do a lot of sports at school.
 33. My brother likes running, (**and**) he doesn't like swimming.
 34. My mom likes reading (**but**) writing short stories.
 35. I like oranges (**but**) bananas.
 36. I want to eat pizza, (**or**) it isn't healthy.
 37. I like playing tennis (**and**) I can't play well.
 38. Milk is healthy (**or**) cola is unhealthy.
 39. I want to plant a flower, (**and**) I don't have seeds.
 40. I have candy (**but**) cola.
 41. Let's (**having**) our breakfast.
 42. I eat chicken (**and**) I eat fish.
 43. He wants to play tennis (**and**) he is busy.
 44. The horse is (**short**) than a camel.
 45. I play tennis (**but**) football.
 46. She likes to play football, (**and**) she can't play it.

(الشرقية - 2024)

(الإسماعيلية - 2024)

(الشرقية - 2024)

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. i do a lot of sports at school

 2. my mom makes a delicious cake

(3) Lesson three "The empty pot"

➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- | | | | | |
|---|---------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. The emperor lived in a beautiful | Ⓐ desert | Ⓑ garden | Ⓒ school | Ⓓ palace |
| 2. We our homework yesterday. | Ⓐ recycled | Ⓑ redid | Ⓒ repainted | Ⓓ recleaned |
| 3. A/An is someone who looks after gardens. | Ⓐ scientist | Ⓑ emperor | Ⓒ gardener | Ⓓ king |
| 4. We put the in the pot to grow. | Ⓐ seeds | Ⓑ water | Ⓒ food | Ⓓ candy |
| 5. My friend is kind and | Ⓐ dead | Ⓑ honest | Ⓒ bad | Ⓓ unhealthy |
| 6. Someone who is, does not lie. | Ⓐ beautiful | Ⓑ ugly | Ⓒ honest | Ⓓ happy |
| 7. This plant is because it doesn't grow. | Ⓐ dead | Ⓑ honest | Ⓒ empty | Ⓓ good |
| 10. My brother will try to win in the | Ⓐ competition | Ⓑ station | Ⓒ transportation | Ⓓ seed |
| 11. The keeps the garden clean. | Ⓐ vet | Ⓑ bus driver | Ⓒ gardener | Ⓓ electrician |

12. He is from He is Chinese.
 (a) China (b) Egypt (c) Italy (d) France
13. The boy was very sad because he the game.
 (a) asked (b) won (c) tried (d) lost
14. When the seed is, it cannot grow.
 (a) good (b) dead (c) green (d) hard
15. Omar is really He never lies.
 (a) honest (b) important (c) hard (d) dead
16. An emperor is someone who is like a
 (a) farmer (b) plumber (c) king (d) gardener
17. My friend is kind and
 (a) dead (b) honest (c) bad (d) unhealthy
18. The emperor lived in a beautiful
 (a) desert (b) garden (c) school (d) palace
19. Cheng was good at looking his garden.
 (a) at (b) for (c) after (d) from
20. An honest person doesn't
 (a) talk (b) lie (c) work (d) win

➔ Punctate the following:

1. eman lived in China.
2. cheng was very good at growing things

(4.5) Lesson four and five "Writing"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Damietta is an Egyptian
 (a) street (b) village (c) governorate (d) beach
2. The land in Damietta is rich in
 (a) stars (b) birds (c) fish (d) nutrients
3. Domiate is very famous.
 (a) cheese (b) sheep (c) chicken (d) chips
4. catch thousands of fish in the sea.
 (a) Fishermen (b) Farmers (c) Teachers (d) Mechanics
5. We need to grow to make bread.
 (a) lemons (b) potatoes (c) wheat (d) guava
6. My favourite fruit are and grapes.
 (a) wheat (b) rice (c) guavas (d) milk
7. Fruits are healthy. They're rich in
 (a) salt (b) nutrients (c) leaves (d) money
8. and sheep are animals we find on the farm.
 (a) Elephants (b) Fish (c) Goats (d) Lions
9. About 1.5 million Egyptians live in Damietta
 (a) governorate (b) town (c) village (d) country
10. in Damietta grow wheat, lemons, and grapes.
 (a) Farmers (b) Animals (c) Fishermen (d) Fish
11. Fruits are in vitamins.
 (a) poor (b) weak (c) rich (d) expensive
12. Cows, goats, and are animals that live in Damietta, too.
 (a) wheat (b) sheep (c) rice (d) lemons

13. Farmers in Damietta grow many kinds of fruits like grapes and
 Ⓐ rice Ⓑ wheat Ⓒ guavas Ⓓ cheese
14. Crops need a that is rich in nutrients to grow well.
 Ⓐ sea Ⓑ governorate Ⓒ farmer Ⓓ land
15. Fishermen use catch fish.
 Ⓐ hotels Ⓑ trees Ⓒ nets Ⓓ animals
16. Life is in Damietta. Many people live happily there.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ unhealthy Ⓒ good Ⓓ difficult

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيليت – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية - 2022)

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do farmers raise?
2. Summarize the text in two sentence?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Farmers grow fruits and
 Ⓐ cheese Ⓑ chicken Ⓒ vegetables Ⓓ villages
4. Omar lives in a small
 Ⓐ city Ⓑ village Ⓒ town Ⓓ desert

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Life is good in Damietta.
2. What do farmers grow in damietta

(تورسعيد - 2024)

(2) Unit two "Desert animals"

(1) Lesson one "Animals in desert"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The camel lives in the
 Ⓐ sea Ⓑ sky Ⓒ river Ⓓ desert
2. Crocodiles are huge and
 Ⓐ cute Ⓑ scary Ⓒ small Ⓓ young
3. Spiders are They eat insects.
 Ⓐ tall Ⓑ funny Ⓒ huge Ⓓ helpful
4. It is to swim here. There are crocodiles.
 Ⓐ dangerous Ⓑ cute Ⓒ huge Ⓓ ugly
5. The is a big animal.
 Ⓐ ant Ⓑ bee Ⓒ camel Ⓓ spider
6. are huge and scary. They have sharp teeth.
 Ⓐ Birds Ⓑ Insects Ⓒ Lizards Ⓓ Crocodiles
7. Both camels and live in the desert.
 Ⓐ crocodiles Ⓑ fennec foxes Ⓒ ducks Ⓓ fish
8. don't have any legs, but they can move fast.
 Ⓐ Camels Ⓑ Insects Ⓒ Birds Ⓓ Snakes

9. Different kinds of can fly.
 Ⓐ lizards Ⓑ Snakes Ⓒ birds Ⓓ camels
10. eat insect and farmers like them.
 Ⓐ Crocodiles Ⓑ Snakes Ⓒ Camels Ⓓ Spiders
11. are smaller than birds.
 Ⓐ Foxes Ⓑ Crocodiles Ⓒ Insects Ⓓ Camels
12. The snake is very I don't like it.
 Ⓐ beautiful Ⓑ scary Ⓒ cute Ⓓ helpful
13. Egypt is a
 Ⓐ city Ⓑ village Ⓒ sea Ⓓ country
14. The fennec fox has thick
 Ⓐ far Ⓑ fur Ⓒ for Ⓓ fat (القليوبيث - 2024)
15. Camels can live without for a long time.
 Ⓐ clothes Ⓑ water Ⓒ fur Ⓓ feet (الطنوفيث - 2024)
16. Look at those beautiful flying in the sky.
 Ⓐ camels Ⓑ crocodiles Ⓒ birds Ⓓ lizards
17. Spiders eat
 Ⓐ insects Ⓑ camels Ⓒ birds Ⓓ snakes
18. There are many animal that in our country.
 Ⓐ live Ⓑ need Ⓒ think Ⓓ play
19. Adam always helps his friends. He is very
 Ⓐ help Ⓑ helpless Ⓒ helpful Ⓓ bad
20. are very dangerous.
 Ⓐ Camels Ⓑ Fish Ⓒ Birds Ⓓ Crocodiles
21. The is a small type of foxes that live in the desert.
 Ⓐ bird Ⓑ camel Ⓒ fennec fox Ⓓ snake
22. live in the deserts.
 Ⓐ Bears Ⓑ Camels Ⓒ Dolphins Ⓓ Fish
23. Camels are perfect for the
 Ⓐ sea Ⓑ river Ⓒ lake Ⓓ desert

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

job – scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They do a very important (1) They eat (2), birds and lizards. This (3) the number of these small animal . We sometimes think some animals are (4) or ugly, but they are all important.

huge – spiders – agree – snake – farmers

Last week, I visited the zoo with my parents. We saw many different animals there. The crocodile was (1) huge . The (2) was scary. We saw many (3) My sister thought spiders were ugly! Mom told us (4) like spiders because they eat insects.

helpful – important – huge – animals – food

In our country, there are many (1) There are crocodiles. They're (2) and scary. There are also spiders. Spiders are very (3) They eat insects. Animals are all (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tarek and Sara's favorite subject at school is science. This week, they are studying animals that live in Egypt. Camels and fennec foxes are animals that live in the desert. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they control the number of small animals. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful. They eat small insects. That's why farmers like them. All animals are important.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do snakes and crocodiles do?

2. Why do farmers like spiders?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about .

- Ⓐ spiders and farmers Ⓑ Tarek and Sara Ⓒ animals in Egypt Ⓓ science lessons

4. Camels and are animals that live in the desert.

- Ⓐ spiders Ⓑ fennec foxes Ⓒ crocodiles Ⓓ insects

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. farmers like spiders

2. They eat insects birds, and lizards

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. snakes are scary animals

(الدقهلية - 2024)

(2) Lesson two "Amazing desert animals"

➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. Camels have flat

- Ⓐ teeth Ⓑ legs Ⓒ feet Ⓓ humps

2. Camels are and beautiful.

- Ⓐ careful Ⓑ flat Ⓒ amazing Ⓓ delicious

3. Camels are for the desert.

- Ⓐ sad Ⓑ perfect Ⓒ bad Ⓓ large

4. Horses eat and drink fresh water.

- Ⓐ meat Ⓑ grass Ⓒ sand Ⓓ fish

5. We use to make clothes.

- Ⓐ fur Ⓑ eyes Ⓒ humps Ⓓ hair

6. Mom made a cake for my birthday.

- Ⓐ strong Ⓑ special Ⓒ noisy Ⓓ angry

7. Camels carry things and people to cross the

- Ⓐ sea Ⓑ lake Ⓒ river Ⓓ desert

8. We can get delicious from camels.

- Ⓐ fur Ⓑ cake Ⓒ eggs Ⓓ milk

9. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the from coming in.

- Ⓐ air Ⓑ sand Ⓒ water Ⓓ light

10. Can you help me the street, please?

- Ⓐ live Ⓑ carry Ⓒ stop Ⓓ cross

11. A: How is a horse? B: It is about 459 kg.

- Ⓐ fast Ⓑ tall Ⓒ heavy Ⓓ long

(المنوفيت - 2022)

12. Camels can live without for a long time.

- Ⓐ grass Ⓑ water Ⓒ air Ⓓ sleep

13. We can use camels' fur to make !

- Ⓐ bags Ⓑ clothes Ⓒ hats Ⓓ shoes

14. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't in sand.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ drink Ⓒ fly Ⓓ sink
15. I saw a/an movie with my family . I like it.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ boring Ⓒ amazing Ⓓ heavy
16. How is the horse? - It is 88 kph.
 Ⓐ fast Ⓑ long Ⓒ heavy Ⓓ old

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. The blue car is (**fast**) than the red one.
2. Apples are (**healthy**) than candies.
3. Elephants are heavier (**than**) giraffes.
4. The city is (**noisy**) than the countryside.
5. Pizza is (**as**) delicious than a fish.
6. The fennec fox is (**small**) than other foxes.
7. A crocodile is (**most**) dangerous than a fish.
8. How (**heavy**) is the horse? - It's about 1.4 - 1.8 meters tall.
9. How (**fast**) is the horse ? - It is about 450 kg.
10. A turtle is (**slow**) than a rabbit.
11. Math is (**most**) difficult than science.
12. The cat is (**heavy**) than the mouse.
13. A snake is (**much**) dangerous than a dog.
14. How (**fast**) does the camel live ? - 40 years.
15. The park is (**busy**) during summer than winter.
16. The red flower is (**beautiful**) than the yellow one.
17. The camel is stronger (**than**) the horse.
18. Sami is (**tall**) than his sister.
19. Horses are (**most**) beautiful than fennec foxes.
20. The school is bigger, (**than**) the house.
21. I think the cat (**nice**) than the dog. (القاهرة - 2024)
22. Ola's dress is (**most**) colorful than my dress .
23. Nadia is more active (**than**) Heba.
24. Marwa thinks that fennec foxes are (**cute**) than crocodiles.
25. A crocodile is (**big**) than a dog. (اسكندريه - 2024)
26. Cars are (**most**) expensive than bikes.
27. The tiger is (**fast**) than all other animals.
1. The lion is (**dangerous**) than the giraffe.
2. The bear is stronger (**than**) the pelican. (المنوفيه - 2024)
3. The cell phone is (**small**) than the laptop.
4. The car is (**fast**) than the bike.
5. The new house is (**nice**) than the old one.
6. My cousin is (**old**) than me.
7. My new car is (**expensive**) than yours.
8. I think math is easier (**than**) science.
28. Camels live (**long**) than horses.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. camels are more beautiful than horses (القاهرة - 2024)
-

2. What s in a camel's hump
-

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

live – grass – faster – eyes – look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. They have large, beautiful (1) They can live in the desert, but they need people to (2) after them. Horses can (3) for 25 - 30 years. They're (4) than camels, but camels can live longer than horses.

②

fresh – teeth – grass – play – animal

I like animals. My favorite (1) is the horse. I like riding on their backs. Horses have strong (2) They have large beautiful eyes. They like to eat (3) They drink (4) water.

(3) Lesson three "The pelican and the bear"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Bears have sharp
 (a) claws (b) tails (c) noses (d) fur
- I feel I want something to eat.
 (a) sad (b) thirsty (c) hungry (d) angry
- She's of animals, so she doesn't like to touch them.
 (a) happy (b) scared (c) kind (d) strong
- The is a large animal that has paws and sharp claws.
 (a) pelican (b) bear (c) pear (d) fish
- A pelican and a bear are in the
 (a) sea (b) desert (c) pond (d) river
- They are both looking at a big, juicy
 (a) meat (b) chicken (c) fish (d) fruit
- A: How do you, pelican? B: I am hungry.
 (a) watch (b) feed (c) feel (d) fly
- The bear lifted its to take the fish out of the water.
 (a) paw (b) beak (c) head (d) ears
- The is a big white bird that has a long beak.
 (a) fish (b) bee (c) pelican (d) bear
- The bear is bigger and than the pelican.
 (a) smaller (b) stronger (c) weaker (d) thinner
- The pelican uses its to catch fish.
 (a) beak (b) paw (c) hair (d) neck
- A pelican opens its to catch the fish.
 (a) claw (b) beak (c) hand (d) paw
- A pelican has a to eat with.
 (a) wing (b) tail (c) beak (d) paw

(الرفهليت- 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

Beak – paw – juicy – water – lifts

A pelican and a bear are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, (1) fish. The bear (2) its paw. The pelican opens its (3) It is ready to take the fish out of (4)

paws – scary – eat – bears – sky

I'm soha. I love animals. My favorite animals are (1) Bears have strong (2) and sharp claws. They also have sharp teeth. They are (3) animals. They (4) fish.

paw – looking – stronger – beak – water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are (1) at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) The pelican opens its (3) It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is (4) than the pelican.

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. Where s my fish

2. i m bigger and stronger than you

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The fennec is smaller than other foxes.
 (a) gazelle (b) camel (c) crocodile (d) fox
2. Rhim gazelles live in the
 (a) forest (b) North Africa (c) Sahara Desert (d) sea
3. They walk around looking for grass and to eat.
 (a) leaves (b) worms (c) birds (d) insects
4. The rhim gazelles yellow-white protects them from the sun.
 (a) feet (b) horns (c) coat (d) head
5. Both rhim gazelles and fennec fox live in the
 (a) rivers (b) desert (c) mountains (d) farms
6. The fennec fox has thick It helps the fennec fox stay warm.
 (a) beak (b) feather (c) fur (d) wing
7. The rhim gazelle have long
 (a) horns (b) wings (c) feathers (d) beaks
8. The fennec fox has ears.
 (a) big (b) small (c) little (d) tiny
9. Rhim gazelles eat grass,, and plants.
 (a) fish (b) leaves (c) mice (d) insects
10. A: How is a fennec fox? B: It weighs around 1 kilogram.
 (a) heavy (b) long (c) tall (d) old
11. The eats insects, lizards, and small mica.
 (a) camel (b) rhim gazelle (c) pelican (d) fennec fox
12. The fennec fox loses from its ears when it is hot in the desert.
 (a) fur (b) food (c) water (d) heat
13. It's very in the desert.
 (a) tall (b) hot (c) long (d) slow

(الرفهليت - 2024)

➔ **Read and complete the text with the words:****1****sun – beautiful – live – grass – camels**

There are lots of desert animals and the rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very (1) They eat (2), leaves and plants. They don't need to drink a lot of water like (3) They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the (4)

2**desert – kilogram – lizards – ears – heat**

The fennec fox is the smallest of all the world's foxes. It is called desert fox. It lives in the (1) of North Africa. It weighs only one (2) It has big (3) It eats (4) and insects.

3

heat – horns – insects – foxes – fur

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other (1) Its ears are big, really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear (2) and small animals. During the day, it is hot in desert. The fennec fox loses (3) from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick (4) keep it warm.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الفنوج – إدارة إسطا التعليمية - 2024)

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do rhim gazelles live?

2. Summarize the text in two sentence.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Rhim gazelles eat

- Ⓐ meat Ⓑ leaves Ⓒ small animals Ⓓ insects

4. Rhim gazelles have horns.

- Ⓐ short Ⓑ small Ⓒ long Ⓓ big

➔ Punctate the following:

1. does a fennec fox live in Egypt

2. how heavy is a rhim gazelle

3. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North africa

(3) Unit three "Why do we grow plant"

(1) Lesson one "plants and seeds"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We mango trees in our garden.

- Ⓐ shout Ⓑ swim Ⓒ kill Ⓓ grow

2. The farmer the crops to help them grow.

- Ⓐ waters Ⓑ reads Ⓒ writes Ⓓ speaks

3. The sun helps the grow into plants.

- Ⓐ boats Ⓑ chairs Ⓒ seeds Ⓓ desk

4. We need good to grow good plants.

- Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ books Ⓒ bags Ⓓ pens

5. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called

- Ⓐ information Ⓑ fraction Ⓒ germination Ⓓ cutting

6. The grows above the soil.

- Ⓐ water Ⓑ soil Ⓒ shoot Ⓓ root

7. The green of the plants are amazing.

- Ⓐ claws Ⓑ leaves Ⓒ beaks Ⓓ candies

8. We grow white flowers on the in our apartment.

- Ⓐ zoo Ⓑ balcony Ⓒ park Ⓓ museum

9. Put the seed in the and water it.
 Ⓐ soil Ⓑ fridge Ⓒ shoot Ⓓ air
10. grow under the soil. (الإسماعيل - 2024)
 Ⓐ Shoots Ⓑ Flowers Ⓒ Roots Ⓓ Leaves
11. Watermelons have black inside.
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ leaves Ⓒ roots Ⓓ flowers
12. Plants need and water to grow.
 Ⓐ fruits Ⓑ sunlight Ⓒ sugar Ⓓ flowers
13. We need and water to grow plants.
 Ⓐ fruits Ⓑ leaves Ⓒ soil Ⓓ balcony
14. To grow a plant, you need to put a in the soil.
 Ⓐ leave Ⓑ seed Ⓒ shoot Ⓓ root
15. I the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
 Ⓐ play Ⓑ eat Ⓒ sleep Ⓓ water
16. I have a big in my house.
 Ⓐ seed Ⓑ root Ⓒ soil Ⓓ balcony
17. We a seed, and it grows.
 Ⓐ plant Ⓑ come Ⓒ take Ⓓ become
18. The is the part of the plant that grows taller above the soil.
 Ⓐ seed Ⓑ root Ⓒ shoot Ⓓ fruit
19. Tomato have seeds
 Ⓐ upside Ⓑ inside Ⓒ outside Ⓓ beside
20. Tomatoes are before they are red. (البخيرة - 2024)
 Ⓐ red Ⓑ blue Ⓒ white Ⓓ green
21. You need to wait for the tomato to be fruits to eat them.
 Ⓐ shoots Ⓑ leaves Ⓒ flowers Ⓓ seeds
22. When the shoot grows taller above the soil, it usually has green
 Ⓐ soil Ⓑ seeds Ⓒ roots Ⓓ leaves

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

1

grows – roots – leaves – sunlight – red

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1) and water, so it can grow. The seed grows (2) under the soil. Then it (3) a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows (4) and flowers. That is called germination.

2

water – flowers – soil – roots – shoot

(القاهرة - 2024)

We put a seed in the (1) The seed needs sunlight and (2) So it can grow. The seed grows (3) under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tomatoes are delicious and healthy. We use tomatoes in most of our food. We grow tomatoes on our balcony. Mom always takes fresh tomatoes and makes us delicious salad. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seed and grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence?

2. What does mom use the fresh tomatoes for?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text is about " plants "

- Ⓐ Guava Ⓑ Tomato Ⓒ Mango Ⓓ peas

4. We should the plant every day to grow.

- Ⓐ ask Ⓑ hurt Ⓒ water Ⓓ cut

We plant tomatoes on the balcony. We are happy to see the plants grow. They have fruits and flowers. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant grows. That is called the germination process. Our science teacher says plants need sunlight and water so that they can grow.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do tomatoes have inside ?

2. What is the germination process ?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about

- Ⓐ farm Ⓑ science Ⓒ soil Ⓓ germination

4. Plants need and water to grow.

- Ⓐ flowers Ⓑ sunlight Ⓒ science Ⓓ fruits

➔ Punctate the following:

1. can you see the leaves and the flowers

2. that's awesome! I found a red tomato

(الترقيم - 2024)

(2) Lesson two "plants in Egypt"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a place where living things live and grow.

- Ⓐ habitat Ⓑ office Ⓒ first station Ⓓ hospital

2. Lotus flowers grow near the They need a lot of water.

- Ⓐ desert Ⓑ rocks Ⓒ river Ⓓ mountain

3. work in the agricultural habitat.

- Ⓐ Engineers Ⓑ Farmers Ⓒ Vets Ⓓ Teachers

4. Acacia grows in the desert

- Ⓐ ice Ⓑ hobby Ⓒ habitat Ⓓ room

5. Silver rings are expensive, but gold rings are the expensive rings.

- Ⓐ more Ⓑ most Ⓒ less Ⓓ much

6. The daisy is the smallest flower and it lives the

- Ⓐ short Ⓑ shortest Ⓒ shorter Ⓓ a short

7. Butterflies are the colorful insects.

- Ⓐ more Ⓑ many Ⓒ most Ⓓ much

8. Acacia tree grows in habitat. It doesn't need a lot of water.

- Ⓐ rivers Ⓑ agricultural Ⓒ desert Ⓓ lakes

9. Farmer work in the habitat. They grow food for us to eat.

- Ⓐ desert Ⓑ agricultural Ⓒ river Ⓓ lake

10. Both bean plants and grow in the agricultural habitat.

- Ⓐ reed Ⓑ acacia Ⓒ orange tree Ⓓ tamarisk

(البصيرة - 2024)

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. My city is the (nice) place to live.
2. I think the crocodile is the (scarier) animal.
3. He is the (faster) boy in our class.
4. My brother is (then) strongest player in the team
5. Elephants are the (bigger) animals.
6. Which animal is the (scary) ?
7. The sunflower is the (heavy) .
8. The giraffe is the (taller) land animal.
9. The Sahara Desert is the (hot) desert.
10. I think pizza is the (more) delicious food.
11. Soha is the (tall) girl in the class.
12. What is the (small) bird in the world ?
13. This mountain is the (higher) mountain in the world.
14. Marwan is the (smart) boy in math.
15. What is the (more) expensive bag in the shop ?
16. The blue whale is the (bigger) animal.
17. My father is the (brave) person in my family.
18. The turtle is (than) slowest animal.
19. The elephant is the (heavier) land animal.
20. Hala's red dress is the (nice) one.
21. Crocodiles and snakes are the (more) dangerous animals.
22. A snake is the (scary) animal.
23. Bikes are (slow) than cars.
24. The lion is the (more) dangerous animal.
25. Roses live longer than daisies. But sunflowers live the (long).
26. Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the (more) beautiful flowers.
27. Ali is the (kind). He helps all his friends.
28. History books are the (more) interesting books.
29. Noha is the (good) student in the class.
30. My brother thinks math is (bad) subject.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

farmers – rivers – tamarisk – agricultural – habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the (1) habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near (2) and lakes. Acacia and (3) trees grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this (4) don't need much water to grow.

②

rain – seed – rivers – desert – farmers

(الإسماعيل - 2024)

In the agricultural habitat, (1) grow food for us to eat. Plants near the (2) and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the (3) don't need a lot of water. There isn't much (4) in the desert so we can find the acacia plant and tamarisk there.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Rivers and lakes are also plants habitats. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. But in the desert habitat, plants don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert. Acacia plant and tamarisk grow in the desert.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What is a habitat ?

2. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is about " " .

- Ⓐ Plant habitats Ⓑ Clothes Ⓒ festivals Ⓓ Houses

The underlined word "near" is the opposite of

- Ⓐ far Ⓑ close Ⓒ behind Ⓓ about

➔ Punctate the following:

1. how big is the flower

2. the sunflower is the heaviest flower

3. how long does it live

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. air is very dangerous for our bodies.

- Ⓐ Clean Ⓑ Healthy Ⓒ Polluted Ⓓ Green

2. She fresh fruits at the market.

- Ⓐ made Ⓑ bought Ⓒ changed Ⓓ decided

3. They plant many crops and raise animals on the

- Ⓐ tree Ⓑ sunlight Ⓒ air Ⓓ farm

4. Someone who always helps people is

- Ⓐ helpful Ⓑ helpless Ⓒ helpfully Ⓓ help

5. Soha is and cute.

- Ⓐ beautiful Ⓑ beauty Ⓒ more beauty Ⓓ as beauty

6. These dresses are

- Ⓐ color Ⓑ colors Ⓒ colorful Ⓓ colorfully

7. She usually about her children.

- Ⓐ careful Ⓑ cares Ⓒ carefully Ⓓ careless

8. My sister likes the of nature.

- Ⓐ beauty Ⓑ beautiful Ⓒ beautifully Ⓓ more beautiful

9. When there is no water in the land, it becomes

- Ⓐ wet Ⓑ dry Ⓒ good Ⓓ fresh

10. They used to water the seeds.

- Ⓐ rainwater Ⓑ air Ⓒ heat Ⓓ sun

11. I don't like the air in the city.

- Ⓐ clear Ⓑ fresh Ⓒ polluted Ⓓ clean

12. He is of his parents. They did many useful things.

- Ⓐ scared Ⓑ afraid Ⓒ full Ⓓ proud

13. The air is polluted and it's noisy in the

- Ⓐ farm Ⓑ city Ⓒ desert Ⓓ village

14. Lucas's grandparents used rainwater to the seeds.

- Ⓐ buy Ⓑ bring Ⓒ water Ⓓ plant

15. A is a thousand million.

- Ⓐ billion Ⓑ hundred Ⓒ thousand Ⓓ hundred million

16. Mona is always when she crosses the road.
 Ⓐ beautiful Ⓑ careful Ⓒ colorful Ⓓ useful
17. Nour had two of cake.
 Ⓐ slippers Ⓑ swans Ⓒ slices Ⓓ switch
18. Use the to turn the lights on, please.
 Ⓐ slice Ⓑ swan Ⓒ sweet Ⓓ switch
19. Nader helps his mother and the floor.
 Ⓐ sleeps Ⓑ swims Ⓒ sweeps Ⓓ switch
20. Mom has a pair of blue She only wear them at home.
 Ⓐ switches Ⓑ slippers Ⓒ sweets Ⓓ slices

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Salma is a (**beauty**) girl.
 2. My brother likes (**colorfully**) flowers.
 3. Ali is a (**care**) driver. He drives carefully.
 4. This book is (**use**). I will read it again.
 5. The flowers in the garden are very (**beauty**).
 6. Be (**care**) when you cut the vegetables with a knife.
 7. Shady is (**help**) and kind to other people.
 8. Noha likes wearing (**color**) clothes.
 9. Reading is very (**use**).
 10. My dad uses some (**use**) tools to fix his car.
 11. Be (**care**) when you use the knife.
 12. Marwa has a (**beauty**) pink dress.
 13. Parrots are (**color**) birds. You can see them at the zoo.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

flowers – green – billion – proud – life

My grandparents had a farm. They had a good (1) there. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a (2) liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) They planted trees and (4)

desert land – green – rainwater – life – seeds

Today, Lara lives on a special farm with her mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good (1) They plant millions of (3) to make the land green. They use billions of liters of (2) to plant the seeds. Lara knows it's important to turn the (4) into farmland because it helps them get more crops.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds, They used rainwater to water the seed. **They** planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his parents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His parents are very proud of his grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence.

2. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. They planted millions of
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ flowers Ⓒ festivals Ⓓ farms
4. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to Adam's
 Ⓐ friends Ⓑ parents Ⓒ grandparents Ⓓ sisters

➔ Punctate the following:

1. i live on a farm

2. who is lucas

3. He lives on a farm in the united states

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The sunflower opens and the sun.
 (a) closes (b) faces (c) puts (d) drops
2. Baskets and sandals in Ancient Egypt were made from
 (a) glass (b) papyrus (c) cotton (d) water
3. The sunflower dies and the life begins again.
 (a) cycle (b) time (c) boat (d) style
4. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm to grow.
 (a) feather (b) stem (c) forest (d) weather
5. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make and baskets.
 (a) beds (b) clothes (c) sandals (d) walls
6. was famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
 (a) Tomato (b) Sunflower (c) papyrus (d) sandal
7. Papyrus needs a lot of water and weather to grow quickly.
 (a) hot (b) cold (c) warm (d) freezing
8. , you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.
 (a) First (b) After first (c) After (d) Finally
9. When the seed , it grows roots under the soil.
 (a) opens (b) germinates (c) faces (d) drops
10. You need to put the seed in the and water it to grow.
 (a) basket (b) river (c) sunlight (d) roots
11. a few weeks, the plant grows leaves and flowers.
 (a) Next (b) After (c) Finally (d) First
12. When the tomato plant dies, it its seeds.
 (a) grows (b) plants (c) germinates (d) drops
13. After about 4 months, the opens and faces the sun.
 (a) shoot (b) seed (c) root (d) sunflower
14. We need to grow plant.
 (a) seeds (b) trees (c) fruits (d) flower
15. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the
 (a) sea (b) beach (c) farm (d) river
16. Ancient Egyptians used to make paper.
 (a) sunflowers (b) papyrus (c) reed (d) rose

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

useful – drink – grow – oil – yellow

A sunflower is a big flower. It's always (1) in color. Sunflowers need a lot of sun to (2) Sunflower seeds also have a lot of (3) in them and people use it for cooking a lot of kinds of foods such as rice, fried potatoes and onions. It's a very beautiful and (4) flower.

roots – sun – After that – germinates – months

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed (1) and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2), the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 (3), it opens and faces the (4)

warm – sandals – famous – river – mountain

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1) because Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2) and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3) weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing a lot of plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did papyrus grow ?

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make ?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about " " .

- Ⓐ Lotus Ⓑ Rose Ⓒ Papyrus Ⓓ Tomatoes

4. Papyrus needs a lot of To grow.

- Ⓐ sand Ⓑ waves Ⓒ water Ⓓ paper

➔ Punctate the following:

1. why do farmers grow sunflowers

2. Ancient egyptian used papyrus to make paper

3. why do farmers grow sunflower

4. papyrus grow in the nile delta

(4) Unit four "Where do you live"**(1) Lesson one****➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. I can see the whole street from the

- Ⓐ balcony Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ kitchen

2. In the desert people live in

- Ⓐ houseboats Ⓑ balconies Ⓒ apartments Ⓓ tents

3. I sleep in a big It has two big beds.

- Ⓐ bathroom Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ living room Ⓓ kitchen

4. I play computer games in the where there is a big TV.

- Ⓐ kitchen Ⓑ living room Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ balcony

5. My mom cooks food in the

- Ⓐ bedroom Ⓑ kitchen Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ living room

6. My friend lives on a She loves living on water.

- Ⓐ tent Ⓑ houseboat Ⓒ garden Ⓓ balcony

7. My aunt moved to a new last week. It's in a big building.
 Ⓐ tent Ⓑ houseboat Ⓒ house Ⓓ room
8. You shouldn't play in the
 Ⓐ club Ⓑ street Ⓒ garden Ⓓ park
9. The is the room where I eat dinner with my family.
 Ⓐ garden Ⓑ bathroom Ⓒ dining room Ⓓ balcony
10. Omar likes watching television with his family in the
 Ⓐ living room Ⓑ kitchen Ⓒ tent Ⓓ bathroom
11. He takes a shower in the
 Ⓐ living room Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ garden
12. My mother is making dinner in the
 Ⓐ houseboat Ⓑ dining room Ⓒ kitchen Ⓓ balcony
13. You should your room by yourself.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ sleep Ⓒ organize Ⓓ move
14. are made of cloth.
 Ⓐ Houseboats Ⓑ Tents Ⓒ Houses Ⓓ Apartments

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

beds – garden – rooms – living room – house

(الورسيعر - 2024)

My grandparents lives in a big (1) It's on the corner of the city. It has many rooms. There are two (2) in my bedroom. They have a big (3) with television and a couch. I love playing with my cousins in the (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(السويص - 2024)

My name is Hazem. I'm in grade four. I live in a **big** house with my family. We have three bedrooms and one bathroom. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch television in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hazem watch television?

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Hazem's father is a
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ doctor Ⓒ farmer Ⓓ fisherman
4. The opposite of the underlined word "**big**" is
 Ⓐ huge Ⓑ small Ⓒ enormous Ⓓ giant

➔ Punctate the following:

1. they have a big balcony

2. which is your favorite room

(الفاهرة - 2024)

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister goes to to learn.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ shopping mall Ⓒ post office Ⓓ office
2. Noha went to the when she was sick.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ office Ⓒ hospital Ⓓ supermarket

3. They went to the to buy food.
 (a) supermarket (b) shopping mall (c) office (d) hospital
4. Can you tell me where the is? I want to send a letter.
 (a) hospital (b) school (c) post office (d) office
5. Ola works in a/an It has many desks and computers.
 (a) hospital (b) park (c) supermarket (d) office
6. Nadia went to the to buy some new clothes.
 (a) park (b) shopping mall (c) office (d) school
7. Fish live water.
 (a) on (b) in (c) behind (d) between
8. A: is the key? B: It's on the table.
 (a) What (b) Where (c) When (d) How
9. My school is of the shopping mall.
 (a) next (b) behind (c) above (d) in front
10. Ola's house is the school and the city park.
 (a) between (b) next to (c) on (d) behind
11. The bridge is the river.
 (a) in (b) under (c) above (d) next
12. The pet is hiding the door.
 (a) in front (b) between (c) next (d) behind
13. My house is to the Nile.
 (a) in front (b) above (c) on (d) next
14. A: Can you see the pen? B: It's the book.
 (a) next (b) between (c) under (d) in front
15. My book is the table. I can't see it.
 (a) next (b) in front of (c) behind (d) on (الإسماعيليت - 2024)
16. The hospital is the shopping mall and the park.
 (a) next (b) in front (c) on (d) between
17. Sara went to the to send a letter.
 (a) school (b) hospital (c) post office (d) park
18. A: is the park? B: It's behind the office.
 (a) When (b) Why (c) Where (d) Who
19. A: Where can I send ? B: In the post office.
 (a) food (b) clothes (c) letters (d) games
20. Excuse me! Where is the ? I want to buy some food.
 (a) school (b) hospital (c) supermarket (d) shopping mall
21. My dad goes to the when he feels sick.
 (a) post office (b) hospital (c) office (d) supermarket
22. I can buy some new at the shopping mall.
 (a) shoes (b) houses (c) tents (d) letters
23. My children never go to the on Friday. It's a holiday.
 (a) supermarket (b) hospital (c) school (d) shopping mall

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. (How) is my book? – On the table.
2. There is a chair (in) to the table.
3. Put your books (under) your bag, please.
4. The shopping mall is in front (on) the bank.
5. The roots grow (behind) the soil.
6. The house is (next) the school and the supermarket.
7. The book is (in) the table.

(الفاهرة - 2024)

(أسوان - 2024)

8. Nadeen is hiding (in front of) the tree.
 9. The cat is (on) the table. I can't see it.
 10. There are ten apples (in front) the fruit basket.
 11. A: (What) is the city bank, please? B: It's next to the park.
 12. Look at the beautiful kite flying (under) the building.
 13. The car is (in) the bike and the bus.
 14. Where (are) the shopping mall.
 15. The kitchen is next (of) the living room.

(القاهرة - المرح - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

play – school – place – supermarket – buy

(القاهرة - 2024)

I love my town. It is a good (1) to live in. It is small, but it has (2) offices, schools, and many other places. I walk to (3) every morning to learn. My school is next to the park. I (4) in the park with my friends.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيزة - 2024)

My name is Soha. I live in a small city. My city has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a school. I go to school by bus. My school is next to the hospital. I go to the park to play tennis. I go to the supermarket to buy different foods and drinks. I love my city.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Soha buy different foods and drinks?

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Soha's school is the hospital.

Ⓐ behind Ⓑ next to Ⓒ in front of Ⓓ between

4. Soha plays tennis in the

Ⓐ school Ⓑ park Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ between

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(المنوفية - 2024)

1. It is hot today. We need to turn on the

Ⓐ bus Ⓑ van Ⓒ fan Ⓓ fish

2. Excuse me! is the post office?

Ⓐ When Ⓑ Why Ⓒ Where Ⓓ Who

3. To go to the mall, go ahead, then turn left.

Ⓐ street Ⓑ straight Ⓒ right Ⓓ corner

4. Hana's house is the supermarket and the school.

Ⓐ between Ⓑ next Ⓒ in front Ⓓ on

5. the second left. My house is on the right.

Ⓐ Travel Ⓑ Go Ⓒ Take Ⓓ Come

6. Sherif English and Chinese.

Ⓐ says Ⓑ meets Ⓒ speaks Ⓓ shouts

7. The hospital is the corner.

Ⓐ at Ⓑ in Ⓒ with Ⓓ on

8. Go straight and left.

Ⓐ take Ⓑ turn Ⓒ see Ⓓ come

9. The post office is the left.

Ⓐ in Ⓑ on Ⓒ at Ⓓ between

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- Excuse me! (**What**) is the supermarket, please?
- (**Turning**) left, my house is on the corner.
- (**Went**) straight ahead. Then turn left.
- The school is (**in**) the corner of South Street.
- (**Took**) the second left at the supermarket.
- The hospital is (**next**) the school and the supermarket.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

summer – down – meet – parents – world

(القاهرة - 2024)

I live on a boat in the summer. My (1) work on tourist boats, so I go with them. We travel up and (2) the Nile. I like the (3) very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My friend Sherif is from Aswan. He lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many **interesting** places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with tourists.

A: Answer the following questions:

- Where do Sherif's parents work?

- Where is Sherif from?

(القاهرة - 2024)

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sherif likes the very much.

Ⓐ winter Ⓑ fall Ⓒ summer Ⓓ spring

- The underlined word "**interesting**" means.

Ⓐ nice Ⓑ boring Ⓒ bad Ⓓ old

➔ Punctate the following:

- my friend Sherif lives on a boat

- i can speak English and arabic.

(الغريب - 2024)

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there. (الغريب - 2024)

Ⓐ schools Ⓑ offices Ⓒ beaches Ⓓ stores
- Mariam lives in a called Hurghada.

Ⓐ city Ⓑ village Ⓒ country Ⓓ beach
- About 190,000 people in Hurghada.

Ⓐ come Ⓑ swim Ⓒ live Ⓓ work
- The is where tourists can go on safaris.

Ⓐ beach Ⓑ park Ⓒ bazaars Ⓓ Sahara Desert
- We can buy beautiful things at the in Sahl Hasheesh.

Ⓐ bazaars Ⓑ tourists Ⓒ photos Ⓓ gardens
- We can buy food at the where Mona works.

Ⓐ desert Ⓑ beach Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ safari park

7. When we buy the food, Mona the food is fresh.
 Ⓐ eats Ⓑ sells Ⓒ sees Ⓓ checks
8. The worker at the supermarket helps us when we can't something.
 Ⓐ find Ⓑ live Ⓒ go Ⓓ meet
9. There's a beach and lots of things to do in Hurghada.
 Ⓐ scary Ⓑ boring Ⓒ interesting Ⓓ strange
10. Soha is She helps everyone in her class.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ kind Ⓒ noisy Ⓓ ugly

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

kind – food – supermarket – fresh – office

This is Hana. She works at the (1) near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy (2) Hana checks the food is (3) She helps us when we can't find something. She is very (4) and happy. We all love her.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safari. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Hurghada?

2. What are there in Sahl Hasheesh?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 Ⓐ Cairo Ⓑ Aswan Ⓒ Luxor Ⓓ Hurghada
4. The underlined word "it" refer to
 Ⓐ the Red Sea Ⓑ the beaches Ⓒ Sahl Hasheesh Ⓓ Sahara desert

➔ Punctate the following:

1. mona works at the supermarket

(المطبخ - 2024)

2. how many people live there

(5) Unit five "Where do you work"

(1) Lesson one

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Youssef is a/an He loves making things work.
 Ⓐ bus driver Ⓑ garbage collector Ⓒ electrician Ⓓ mail carrier
2. Here's the He collects the trash.
 Ⓐ mail carrier Ⓑ bus driver Ⓒ garbage collector Ⓓ electrician
3. A plumber fixes and faucets.
 Ⓐ chairs Ⓑ pipes Ⓒ balls Ⓓ cars
4. My room was yesterday. I had to tidy it.
 Ⓐ difficult Ⓑ wet Ⓒ messy Ⓓ young

5. A/An drives to many different places.
 (a) mechanic (b) driver (c) plumber (d) electrician
6. A/An brings us the parcels.
 (a) garbage collector (b) bus driver (c) mail carrier (d) mechanic
7. The helps us fix pipes to get water. He is very important. (المُنَوِّفِيَّة - 2024)
 (a) tourist guide (b) plumber (c) electrician (d) mail carrier
8. A helps us all. He takes away all the trash. (المُنَوِّفِيَّة - 2024)
 (a) mail carrier (b) garbage collector (c) builder (d) mechanic
9. The fix the cars and buses. (يُورَسِّعِر - 2024)
 (a) electricians' (b) mechanics (c) garbage collector (d) plumbers
10. Cairo produces around 20 million tons of every year.
 (a) pipes (b) parcels (c) garbage (d) faucets
11. Plumbers fix pipes and (القَاهِرَة - 2024)
 (a) tables (b) chairs (c) cars (d) faucets
12. The arrived. Let's get on the bus.
 (a) mechanic (b) bus driver (c) garbage collector (d) plumber
13. My clothes become after raining.
 (a) dry (b) hoy (c) wet (d) near
14. I was much better at pipes and faucets than cars.
 (a) fixing (b) driving (c) eating (d) reading
15. We need a mechanic to our car.
 (a) drive (b) paint (c) play (d) fix
16. A mail carrier brings us
 (a) pipes (b) faucets (c) parcels (d) cars

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

Mail carrier – mechanic – trash – electrician – faucets

(القَاهِرَة - 2024)

Different people have different jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and (1) A mechanic fixes cars. An (2) makes things work. A (3) has our parcels. A garbage collector takes the (4) I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(المُنَوِّفِيَّة - 2024)

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers our parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to make our life easier.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does a mechanic do?

2. Why should all workers work together?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 (a) food (b) animals (c) jobs (d) places
4. The word "....." in the text means garbage.
 (a) trash (b) faucets (c) fixes (d) places

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Dad do you like your job

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Electricity is but we need it.
 Ⓐ safe Ⓑ dangerous Ⓒ wet Ⓓ slow
2. We should use electricity
 Ⓐ fast Ⓑ slowly Ⓒ quickly Ⓓ safely
3. To make the machine work, put the into a socket.
 Ⓐ bug Ⓑ storm Ⓒ plug Ⓓ hand
4. are Ola's new tools.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ This Ⓒ The Ⓓ Those
5. Don't touch socket. It's dangerous.
 Ⓐ than Ⓑ these Ⓒ those Ⓓ this
6. house over there is very old.
 Ⓐ They Ⓑ These Ⓒ That Ⓓ Those
7. is such a nice place to live in.
 Ⓐ These Ⓑ They Ⓒ This Ⓓ Those
8. An electric shock can us.
 Ⓐ travel Ⓑ practice Ⓒ use Ⓓ burn
9. We sometimes see a flash of in a storm. (المنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ faucet Ⓑ water Ⓒ shock Ⓓ lightning
10. Never touch anything electrical with hands. It's very dangerous. (المنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ cute Ⓑ dry Ⓒ wet Ⓓ small
11. are my books.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ Those Ⓒ This Ⓓ The
12. bird is so near. I can see it well.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ This Ⓒ They Ⓓ Those

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. This (**are**) the mail carrier. (الإسكندرية - 2024)
2. Those (**is**) my pencils. (القاهرة - 2024)
3. That (**are**) your pen. (البحيرة - 2024)
4. These (**is**) the electrician's tools. (دمياط - 2024)
5. This (**are**) a socket. (القاهرة - 2024)
6. Look at (**those**) butterfly outside! It's flying away.
7. (**This**) are the plumber's tools. (القاهرة - 2024)
8. This car (**are**) very expensive.
9. Nour found (**that**) shells on the beach last summer.
10. (**Those**) cloud look like a teddy bear.
11. (**This**) are Noha and Ola. They are my best friends.
12. Can you get (**those**) apple on the cupboard?
13. (**That**) mountains are very high.
14. Let's water (**this**) plants together.
15. (**This**) shoes look very expensive.
16. (**That**) flowers over there are very beautiful.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

electrician – fast – year – flash – dangerous

Mazen wants to be an **(1)** Electricity is very **(2)** so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very **(3)** close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a **(4)** of lightning.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. is electricity dangerous

(الفقرة - 2023)

(3) Lesson three

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hana used the to open old radios and cell phones.
 Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ tape measure Ⓒ screwdriver Ⓓ cousins
- Amir is always He's never angry.
 Ⓐ careful Ⓑ sad Ⓒ sorry Ⓓ patient
- My daughter is a/an She is eighteen.
 Ⓐ child Ⓑ baby Ⓒ adult Ⓓ cousin
- Talia always carried a tape and a pencil.
 Ⓐ measure Ⓑ doll Ⓒ block Ⓓ screwdriver
- My sister is She loves to know everything.
 Ⓐ patient Ⓑ curious Ⓒ favorite Ⓓ little
- My father is an electrician. He can fix
 Ⓐ tables Ⓑ pipes Ⓒ radios Ⓓ faucets
- I use my to speak with my friends.
 Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ cell phone Ⓒ screwdriver Ⓓ tape measure
- The teacher the new lesson very well.
 Ⓐ explained Ⓑ carried Ⓒ changed Ⓓ opened

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- When Lara **(is)** little, she loved to experiment.
- Amir **(help)** all his friends when he was young.
- When my sister **(is)** a child, she played with blocks.
- When Nadia was young, she **(start)** making new things.
- Dad **(use)** the screwdriver to open the cell phone yesterday.
- Nour **(be)** never angry when he was little.

(المنوحي - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a **(1)** and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had **(2)** Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about **(3)** with electricity. Now, Lama is an **(4)** and she loves her job very much.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيل - 2024)

When Salma was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Salma when you want to change something in your house.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Salma can work as an electrician or an architect in the future?

2. Why did Salma use the tape measure?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text talks about

- Ⓐ Heba Ⓑ Mona Ⓒ Salma's sister Ⓓ Salma

4. When Salma was a baby, she played with

- Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ dolls Ⓒ cars Ⓓ bikes

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. Lara Talia, and amir are all adults

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. "Pros" are the points about something.

- Ⓐ bad Ⓑ good Ⓒ easy Ⓓ difficult

2. One of the of being a mail carrier is carrying heavy mail bags.

- Ⓐ pros Ⓑ ants Ⓒ cons Ⓓ tons

3. A mail carrier works all day.

- Ⓐ at home Ⓑ at office Ⓒ inside Ⓓ outside

4. It's great for the mail carrier when the weather is

- Ⓐ hot Ⓑ windy Ⓒ cold Ⓓ good

5. likes meeting the mail carrier.

- Ⓐ Everybody Ⓑ Nobody Ⓒ No one Ⓓ No people

6. Being a mail carrier is not a/an job.

- Ⓐ good Ⓑ important Ⓒ easy Ⓓ useful

7. There are many that made our school.

- Ⓐ doctors Ⓑ teachers Ⓒ workers Ⓓ students

8. The fix the cars and buses that bring children to school.

- Ⓐ plumbers Ⓑ cleaners Ⓒ electricians Ⓓ mechanics

9. keep the school clean.

- Ⓐ Bus drivers Ⓑ Teachers Ⓒ Cleaners Ⓓ Plumbers

10. The help us use lights.

- Ⓐ cleaners Ⓑ doctors Ⓒ electricians Ⓓ mail carriers

11. The electrician connects

- Ⓐ bus Ⓑ bag Ⓒ garbage Ⓓ electricity

12. Our bring the children to school.

- Ⓐ garbage collectors Ⓑ mechanics Ⓒ plumbers Ⓓ bus drivers

➔ **Read and complete the text with the words:**

mail carrier – nice – hot – walk – outside

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are (1) all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very (2) or cold. Mail carriers (3) all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes meeting the (4)

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I want to be a mail carrier. But I will be outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. My brother Ali wants to be an electrician to connect electricity so that people can use lights easily. My friend Maged wants to be a bus driver to bring the children to school. My friend Noha wants to be a mechanic to fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Maged want to be a bus driver?

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali wants to be a/an

Ⓐ engineer

Ⓑ electrician

Ⓒ mail carrier

Ⓓ teacher

4. wants to be a mechanic.

Ⓐ Tamer

Ⓑ Maged

Ⓒ Noha

Ⓓ Father

➔ Punctate the following:

1. workers keep the school clean

(الشرفيـة - 2024)

2. what does the bus driver do

(المنوفية - 2024)

(6) Unit six "What do you do"

(1) Lesson one

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars, buses, and trains are forms of

Ⓐ foods

Ⓑ colors

Ⓒ transportation

Ⓓ schools

2. Ahmed is a He works in the tourism industry.

Ⓐ farmer

Ⓑ librarian

Ⓒ guide

Ⓓ fisherman

3. Fishermen use nets and to catch fish.

Ⓐ animals

Ⓑ hotels

Ⓒ schools

Ⓓ boats

4. My father is a farmer. He works in the industry.

Ⓐ farming

Ⓑ fishing

Ⓒ education

Ⓓ tourism

5. Habiba is a guide. She works with from all over the world.

Ⓐ boats

Ⓑ fish

Ⓒ tourists

Ⓓ animals

6. Before you pick up the fruit, you give them to grow.

Ⓐ books

Ⓑ nutrients

Ⓒ nets

Ⓓ hotels

7. A works in seas or rivers. He catches a lot of fish.

Ⓐ plumber

Ⓑ teacher

Ⓒ fisherman

Ⓓ guide

(الشرفيـة - 2024)

8. grow food for us.

Ⓐ Farmers

Ⓑ Teachers

Ⓒ Doctors

Ⓓ Vets

9. Teachers work in the industry.

Ⓐ farming

Ⓑ tourism

Ⓒ education

Ⓓ fishing

10. A farmer sends the fruit to the to make orange juice.

Ⓐ hotel

Ⓑ library

Ⓒ sea

Ⓓ factory

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- I (be) a farmer and I work in the farming industry.
- My father (be) a librarian.
- They (be) guides. They work in the tourism industry.
- The fisherman (wake) up early and goes out on his boat.
- Mom (sell) fish in the market.
- We (sending) the oranges to the factory to make orange juice.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

electricity – job – information – library – librarian

(الإسمايلية - 2024)

I'm Sherifa. I like books very much. I'm a (1) I work in a school (2) It's my (3) to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the (4) they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيلية - 2024)

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman; he works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then, in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer; he works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a guide; he explains history of the places that tourists visit.

A: Answer the following questions:

- Who explains the history to tourists?

- What does a farmer do?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
 Ⓐ farmers Ⓑ fishermen Ⓒ guides Ⓓ jobs
- A goes out on his boat and catches fish.
 Ⓐ farmer Ⓑ fisherman Ⓒ guide Ⓓ teacher

➔ Punctate the following:

- what do librarians do

- i work in the tourism industry

(القاهرة - 2024)

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We can make from energy sources.
 Ⓐ shoes Ⓑ videos Ⓒ electricity Ⓓ fun
- energy is a renewable energy source that comes from the sun.
 Ⓐ Oil Ⓑ Solar Ⓒ Wind Ⓓ Gas
- energy is clean.
 Ⓐ Coal Ⓑ Gas Ⓒ Oil Ⓓ Solar
- I like looking of the window.
 Ⓐ at Ⓑ in Ⓒ out Ⓓ on
- sources can grow again or never run out.
 Ⓐ Renewable Ⓑ Non-renewable Ⓒ Wrong Ⓓ Right
- Mango is my favorite
 Ⓐ food Ⓑ place Ⓒ vegetable Ⓓ fruit

7. We get wood from
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ houses Ⓒ trees Ⓓ money
8. Coal and oil are energy sources.
 Ⓐ renewable Ⓑ non-renewable Ⓒ new Ⓓ old
9. The chair is made of
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ wood Ⓒ oil Ⓓ coal
10. They cut the tree yesterday.
 Ⓐ down Ⓑ in Ⓒ on Ⓓ at

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

wind – play – use – electricity – sources

(الاسكندريه - 2024)

Renewable energy (1) are everywhere. Wave, solar, and (2) energy are renewable energy sources. We can use these sources to make (3) There are many things today that (4) electricity.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ali and Waleed are brothers. Each brother had a beautiful orange tree next to his house. The brothers ate beautiful oranges and their children played under the trees. One day, Waleed decided to sell his tree because he needed money. He cut the wood and sold it. Waleed was happy. Next year, Ali's orange tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Ali more oranges. Waleed looked out of the window. There was no orange tree. He had no oranges and no more wood. Ali helped Waleed plant an orange seed to grow into a big tree.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Waleed decide to cut down his orange tree?

2. How did Ali help Waleed?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali and Waleed are
 Ⓐ sisters Ⓑ friends Ⓒ classmates Ⓓ brothers
4. Each brother had a beautiful tree next to his house
 Ⓐ orange Ⓑ banana Ⓒ mango Ⓓ strawberry

➔ Punctate the following:

1. sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger

2. would you cut the mango tree

(البحيرة - 2024)

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The old sells fresh fish.
 Ⓐ mom Ⓑ grandpa Ⓒ mechanic Ⓓ fisherman
2. The old man around the village in an old van.
 Ⓐ walks Ⓑ shouts Ⓒ drives Ⓓ swims
3. I was when I couldn't find my book.
 Ⓐ happy Ⓑ disappointed Ⓒ excited Ⓓ interested
4. Grandpa was a He could fix cars.
 Ⓐ farmer Ⓑ fisherman Ⓒ guide Ⓓ mechanic
5. The old man was when my mom fixed the engine.
 Ⓐ disappointed Ⓑ sad Ⓒ worried Ⓓ surprised
6. I can't start the van. The doesn't work.
 Ⓐ fish Ⓑ engine Ⓒ job Ⓓ village

7. Nour ice cream. She never eats it.
 Ⓐ likes Ⓑ dislikes Ⓒ disagrees Ⓓ disobeys
8. Where is my cat? It somewhere.
 Ⓐ disappeared Ⓑ disagreed Ⓒ disliked Ⓓ disappointed
9. A: I think pizza is the best food ever. B: No, I with you.
 Ⓐ agree Ⓑ dislike Ⓒ disagree Ⓓ obey
10. Manal was sorry because she her teacher.
 Ⓐ obeyed Ⓑ liked Ⓒ agreed Ⓓ disobeyed

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. We shouldn't (**obey**) our parents.
2. Hossam (**likes**) fish. He never eats it.
3. Ola was (**appointed**) when she lost the race.
4. The two sisters always (**agree**). They never agree.
5. My keys (**appeared**). Can you help me find them?

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

village – surprised – disappointed – engine – fish

(جبر- 2024)

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove around the (1) in an old van. He sold fresh (2) Everyone liked his fresh fish. One day, he was (3) because he couldn't start the van. Mom fixed the (4) and helped the old man.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

There was an old fisherman who liked his job. He drove around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My grandpa saw the man. It was hot in the sun. he wanted to help. He looked at the old van's engine. It was a very **simple** problem. he fixed the engine. The fisherman was surprised and happy. He gave my grandpa ten fresh fish.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who fixed the van?
-
2. Why was the fisherman happy at the end?
-

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The fisherman was because he couldn't start his van
 Ⓐ sad Ⓑ surprised Ⓒ happy Ⓓ fresh
4. The underlined word "simple" means
 Ⓐ hard Ⓑ big Ⓒ easy Ⓓ young

➔ Punctate the following:

1. it's a very simple problem

2. The fisherman couldnt start his van

(الشرفيت- 2024)

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's hard work, but it's
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ exciting Ⓒ boring Ⓓ difficult
2. For teachers, every day is
 Ⓐ boring Ⓑ similar Ⓒ the same Ⓓ different
3. A good teacher can change students'
 Ⓐ books Ⓑ lives Ⓒ trash Ⓓ questions

4. Good teachers need to their students.
 (a) know (b) learn (c) encourage (d) think
5. Teachers need to think
 (a) slowly (b) quickly (c) nearly (d) hardly
6. A good teacher should be very
 (a) surprising (b) different (c) exciting (d) patient
7. We should show to people around us.
 (a) teachers (b) students (c) questions (d) respect
8. I respect the cleaner. I don't trash.
 (a) eat (b) throw (c) buy (d) sell
9. I say thank you to the when I get off the bus.
 (a) bus driver (b) librarian (c) teacher (d) cleaner
10. I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the
 (a) bag (b) bus (c) shelf (d) school

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

(الفأرة - 2024)

change – surprising – easy – patient – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask (1) questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to (2) their students. They need to be very (3) They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can (4) their students' lives.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيرة - 2024)

We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people. I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the dentist. I listen to his/her advice.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How do we show respect to the teacher?

2. Is it important to show respect to the people around us?

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 (a) dentist (b) teacher (c) respect (d) cleaner
4. We respect to the bus driver.
 (a) eat (b) hop (c) show (d) jump

➔ Punctate the following:

1. i listen to my teacher carefully

2. what job do you want to have

(الإسكندرية - 2024)

(1) Unit one "I feel good"

(1) Lesson one "food and drinks"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The food looks I like it.
 (a) bad (b) cold (c) delicious (d) dirty
2. Let's our lunch.
 (a) eats (b) eat (c) eating (d) ate
3. Egyptians farmers rice in Egypt.
 (a) raise (b) grow (c) think (d) play
4. Farmers grow many fruits like
 (a) mangoes (b) beans (c) carrots (d) rice
5. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and in Egypt.
 (a) grapes (b) onions (c) watermelon (d) mangoes
6. Egyptian farmers many things you can see on this table.
 (a) think (b) raise (c) produce (d) look
7. Farmers chickens in Egypt.
 (a) grow (b) raise (c) make (d) plant
8. We rice in Egypt.
 (a) raise (b) grow (c) think (d) look
9. Apples and are my favourite fruits.
 (a) mangoes (b) rice (c) onions (d) potatoes
10. I eat chicken and rice for
 (a) dinner (b) breakfast (c) lunch (d) snack
11. Egyptian produce many foods for us.
 (a) farmers (b) doctors (c) teachers (d) nurses
12. Habiba always drinks in the morning. It's healthy.
 (a) onions (b) potatoes (c) animals (d) milk
13. I like very much. We make sugar out of it. (المشروبات - 2022)
 (a) onions (b) watermelon (c) sugarcane (d) chickens
14. I eat in the morning. (الغذاء - 2024)
 (a) breakfast (b) lunch (c) dinner (d) juice
15. Mangoes and are my favourite fruits.
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) rice (d) potatoes
16. We grow in Egypt. (المشروبات - 2022)
 (a) bike (b) rice (c) car (d) bus
17. Farmers grow rice and They help us eat good food. (الغذاء - 2022)
 (a) potatoes (b) chairs (c) chickens (d) animals
18. Mom cooks special food for us. Yum! It looks
 (a) bad (b) unhealthy (c) delicious (d) cold
19. We made chips from
 (a) bananas (b) mangoes (c) potatoes (d) tomatoes

20. I drink a glass of for breakfast.
 (a) onions (b) bananas (c) milk (d) rice
21. We chickens to get fresh eggs.
 (a) raise (b) read (c) look (d) grow
22. Watermelon and are my favorite fruits.
 (a) onions (b) grapes (c) potatoes (d) rice
23. grow vegetables for us to eat.
 (a) Engineers (b) Farmers (c) Doctors (d) Vets
24. Breakfast is my favourite
 (a) job (b) meal (c) clothes (d) place
25. Orange juice is my favourite
 (a) book (b) sport (c) food (d) drink
26. and mangoes are my favourite fruits.
 (a) Watermelon (b) Rice (c) Milk (d) Onions
27. He is a farmer. He rice on his farm.
 (a) raises (b) grows (c) comes (d) drinks
28. Farmers many vegetables every year.
 (a) happen (b) practice (c) talk (d) produce
29. Domiati cheese is very
 (a) tall (b) wrong (c) famous (d) sad
30. Our houses is so old. We need to it. (اسكندريه - 2024)
 (a) repaint (b) recook (c) reread (d) rewrite
31. are kinds of vegetables.
 (a) Oranges (b) Tomatoes (c) Apples (d) Grapes
32. Lunch is mom made some special food for us.
 (a) ready (b) dirty (c) hungry (d) happy

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

raise – grow – produce – shoot – country

(الرفقيليك - 2024)

lots of the food we eat every day comes from our country. Farmers (1) grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes in Egypt. Egyptian farmers (2) raise chickens, sheep, cows, goats, and many other animals. Farmers (3) produce many things that we can buy from the shops or the supermarkets. Egypt is our great (4) country.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Kareem. I live with my family in Ismailia. We have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. My favorite meal is lunch. I like it because all the time we sit together to eat and talk. My mother cooks special food for us. Today, we are having potatoes and chicken for lunch. It looks delicious!

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Kareem's family live?

They live in Ismailia.

2. Why does Kareem like lunch?

Because all the time they sit together to eat and talk.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. We have meals every day.
 (a) two (b) one (c) four (d) three
4. We are having potatoes and chicken for today.
 (a) breakfast (b) lunch (c) dinner (d) break

➔ Punctate the following:

1. egyptian farmers produce many things

Egyptian farmers produce many things.

2. i made special food for us

I made special food for us.

3. we grow rice in egypt.

We grow rice in Egypt.

(2) Lesson two "I'm healthy"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Fruits are and healthy.
 Ⓐ salty Ⓑ sweet Ⓒ bad Ⓓ busy
- He is a/an He is doing some research about plants.
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ engineer Ⓒ scientist Ⓓ guide
- Mom uses bananas and milk to make delicious bananas
 Ⓐ milkshake Ⓑ tea Ⓒ burgers Ⓓ soup
- I don't drink cola because it is
 Ⓐ healthy Ⓑ unhealthy Ⓒ good Ⓓ delicious
- My dad is a/an and he likes looking at plants and animals.
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ basketball player Ⓒ scientist Ⓓ interviewer
- I don't eat It's unhealthy.
 Ⓐ fruits Ⓑ candy Ⓒ bananas Ⓓ vegetables
- She's an active player. She three times a week.
 Ⓐ walks Ⓑ goes Ⓒ practices Ⓓ makes
- Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is
 Ⓐ healthy Ⓑ scary Ⓒ tired Ⓓ unhealthy
- I think I'm I like to play basketball.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ sick Ⓒ healthy Ⓓ unhealthy

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- I want to play football, **but** (**and**) my leg hurts.
- The farmers grow rice, tomatoes **and** (**but**) potatoes in Egypt.
- I like burgers, **but** (**and**) I only eat one a week.
- I like to play football **and** (**but**) tennis.
- I don't eat candy, **but** (**and**) I eat fruit.
- He can speak English **and** (**or**) Arabic.
- I eat vegetables **and** (**but**) I exercise.
- I want to play football, **but** (**and**) I'm ill.
- I practice basketball **and** (**but**) football.
- I like chocolate **and** (**but**) ice cream.
- Nabil speaks English, **but** (**and**) he can't speak Chinese.
- I want to go swimming, **but** (**and**) it is raining.
- After school, I do my homework **and** (**because**) I eat dinner.
- I practice basketball **and** (**or**) I walk home from school every day.
- I don't drink cola, **but** (**or**) I drink fresh juice.
- I want to be healthy, **but** (**and**) I don't like to eat vegetables.
- Cats are cute **and** (**but**) quiet.
- I like reading stories **and** (**but**) I like watching films, too.
- Your cat is small, **but** (**so**) my cat is big.
- She is a tour guide **and** (**but**) she likes reading about museums.
- I can speak English **and** (**or**) French.
- We wash the potatoes **and** (**but**) cut them into pieces.
- I like chocolate ice cream, **but** (**or**) my sister likes vanilla.

24. Moaz has a car, **but** (**and**) he likes waking to his office.
 25. I have one brother **and** (**but**) two sisters.
 26. She wants to buy a car, **but** (**and**) she doesn't have enough money.
 27. Mona sleeps early **and** (**but**) wakes up early every day.
 28. Mazen is a good player, **but** (**and**) he needs to practice more.
 29. They don't eat candy **and** (**but**) they don't like cola.
 30. I studied hard, **but** (**and**) I didn't pass the exam.
 31. She loves pizza, **but** (**and**) she doesn't eat it.
 32. The kids drink water **and** (**but**) do a lot of sports at school.
 33. My brother likes running, **but** (**and**) he doesn't like swimming.
 34. My mom likes reading **and** (**but**) writing short stories.
 35. I like oranges **and** (**but**) bananas.
 36. I want to eat pizza, **but** (**or**) it isn't healthy.
 37. I like playing tennis **but** (**and**) I can't play well.
 38. Milk is healthy **but** (**or**) cola is unhealthy.
 39. I want to plant a flower, **but** (**and**) I don't have seeds.
 40. I have candy **and** (**but**) cola.
 41. Let's **have** (**having**) our breakfast.
 42. I eat chicken **but** (**and**) I eat fish.
 43. He wants to play tennis **but** (**and**) he is busy.
 44. The horse is **shorter** (**short**) than a camel.
 45. I play tennis **and** (**but**) football.
 46. She likes to play football, **but** (**and**) she can't play it.

(الشرقي - 2024)

(الإسماعيل - 2024)

(الشرقي - 2024)

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. i do a lot of sports at school
I do a lot of sports at school.
 2. my mom makes a delicious cake
My mom makes a delicious cake.

(3) Lesson three "The empty pot"

➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. The emperor lived in a beautiful | Ⓐ desert | Ⓑ garden | Ⓒ school | Ⓓ <u>palace</u> |
| 2. We our homework yesterday. | Ⓐ recycled | Ⓑ <u>redid</u> | Ⓒ repainted | Ⓓ recleaned |
| 3. A/An is someone who looks after gardens. | Ⓐ scientist | Ⓑ emperor | Ⓒ <u>gardener</u> | Ⓓ king |
| 4. We put the in the pot to grow. | Ⓐ <u>seeds</u> | Ⓑ water | Ⓒ food | Ⓓ candy |
| 5. My friend is kind and | Ⓐ dead | Ⓑ <u>honest</u> | Ⓒ bad | Ⓓ unhealthy |
| 6. Someone who is, does not lie. | Ⓐ beautiful | Ⓑ ugly | Ⓒ <u>honest</u> | Ⓓ happy |
| 7. This plant is because it doesn't grow. | Ⓐ <u>dead</u> | Ⓑ honest | Ⓒ empty | Ⓓ good |
| 10. My brother will try to win in the | Ⓐ <u>competition</u> | Ⓑ station | Ⓒ transportation | Ⓓ seed |
| 11. The keeps the garden clean. | Ⓐ vet | Ⓑ bus driver | Ⓒ <u>gardener</u> | Ⓓ electrician |

12. He is from He is Chinese.
 Ⓐ China Ⓑ Egypt Ⓒ Italy Ⓓ France
13. The boy was very sad because he the game.
 Ⓐ asked Ⓑ won Ⓒ tried Ⓓ lost
14. When the seed is, it cannot grow.
 Ⓐ good Ⓑ dead Ⓒ green Ⓓ hard
15. Omar is really He never lies.
 Ⓐ honest Ⓑ important Ⓒ hard Ⓓ dead
16. An emperor is someone who is like a
 Ⓐ farmer Ⓑ plumber Ⓒ king Ⓓ gardener
17. My friend is kind and
 Ⓐ dead Ⓑ honest Ⓒ bad Ⓓ unhealthy
18. The emperor lived in a beautiful
 Ⓐ desert Ⓑ garden Ⓒ school Ⓓ palace
19. Cheng was good at looking his garden.
 Ⓐ at Ⓑ for Ⓒ after Ⓓ from
20. An honest person doesn't
 Ⓐ talk Ⓑ lie Ⓒ work Ⓓ win

➔ Punctate the following:

1. eman lived in China.

Eman lived in China.

2. cheng was very good at growing things

Cheng was very good at growing things.

(4.5) Lesson four and five "Writing"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Damietta is an Egyptian
 Ⓐ street Ⓑ village Ⓒ governorate Ⓓ beach
2. The land in Damietta is rich in
 Ⓐ stars Ⓑ birds Ⓒ fish Ⓓ nutrients
3. Domiate is very famous.
 Ⓐ cheese Ⓑ sheep Ⓒ chicken Ⓓ chips
4. catch thousands of fish in the sea.
 Ⓐ Fishermen Ⓑ Farmers Ⓒ Teachers Ⓓ Mechanics
5. We need to grow to make bread.
 Ⓐ lemons Ⓑ potatoes Ⓒ wheat Ⓓ guava
6. My favourite fruit are and grapes.
 Ⓐ wheat Ⓑ rice Ⓒ guavas Ⓓ milk
7. Fruits are healthy. They're rich in
 Ⓐ salt Ⓑ nutrients Ⓒ leaves Ⓓ money
8. and sheep are animals we find on the farm.
 Ⓐ Elephants Ⓑ Fish Ⓒ Goats Ⓓ Lions
9. About 1.5 million Egyptians live in Damietta
 Ⓐ governorate Ⓑ town Ⓒ village Ⓓ country
10. in Damietta grow wheat, lemons, and grapes.
 Ⓐ Farmers Ⓑ Animals Ⓒ Fishermen Ⓓ Fish
11. Fruits are in vitamins.
 Ⓐ poor Ⓑ weak Ⓒ rich Ⓓ expensive
12. Cows, goats, and are animals that live in Damietta, too.
 Ⓐ wheat Ⓑ sheep Ⓒ rice Ⓓ lemons

13. Farmers in Damietta grow many kinds of fruits like grapes and
 Ⓐ rice Ⓑ wheat Ⓒ guavas Ⓓ cheese
14. Crops need a that is rich in nutrients to grow well.
 Ⓐ sea Ⓑ governorate Ⓒ farmer Ⓓ land
15. Fishermen use catch fish.
 Ⓐ hotels Ⓑ trees Ⓒ nets Ⓓ animals
16. Life is in Damietta. Many people live happily there.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ unhealthy Ⓒ good Ⓓ difficult

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيليت – إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية - 2022)

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes, and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes, and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do farmers raise?

They raise chickens.

2. Summarize the text in two sentence?

Omar's Life.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Farmers grow fruits and
 Ⓐ cheese Ⓑ chicken Ⓒ vegetables Ⓓ villages
4. Omar lives in a small
 Ⓐ city Ⓑ village Ⓒ town Ⓓ desert

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Life is good in Damietta.

Life is good in Damietta.

2. What do farmers grow in damietta

(تورسعيد - 2024)

What do farmers grow in Damietta?

(2) Unit two "Desert animals"

(1) Lesson one "Animals in desert"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The camel lives in the
 Ⓐ sea Ⓑ sky Ⓒ river Ⓓ desert
2. Crocodiles are huge and
 Ⓐ cute Ⓑ scary Ⓒ small Ⓓ young
3. Spiders are They eat insects.
 Ⓐ tall Ⓑ funny Ⓒ huge Ⓓ helpful
4. It is to swim here. There are crocodiles.
 Ⓐ dangerous Ⓑ cute Ⓒ huge Ⓓ ugly
5. The is a big animal.
 Ⓐ ant Ⓑ bee Ⓒ camel Ⓓ spider
6. are huge and scary. They have sharp teeth.
 Ⓐ Birds Ⓑ Insects Ⓒ Lizards Ⓓ Crocodiles
7. Both camels and live in the desert.
 Ⓐ crocodiles Ⓑ fennec foxes Ⓒ ducks Ⓓ fish
8. don't have any legs, but they can move fast.
 Ⓐ Camels Ⓑ Insects Ⓒ Birds Ⓓ Snakes

9. Different kinds of can fly.
 (a) lizards (b) Snakes (c) birds (d) camels
10. eat insect and farmers like them.
 (a) Crocodiles (b) Snakes (c) Camels (d) Spiders
11. are smaller than birds.
 (a) Foxes (b) Crocodiles (c) Insects (d) Camels
12. The snake is very I don't like it.
 (a) beautiful (b) scary (c) cute (d) helpful
13. Egypt is a
 (a) city (b) village (c) sea (d) country
14. The fennec fox has thick
 (a) far (b) fur (c) for (d) fat (القليوبيث - 2024)
15. Camels can live without for a long time.
 (a) clothes (b) water (c) fur (d) feet (الطنوفيت - 2024)
16. Look at those beautiful flying in the sky.
 (a) camels (b) crocodiles (c) birds (d) lizards
17. Spiders eat
 (a) insects (b) camels (c) birds (d) snakes
18. There are many animal that in our country.
 (a) live (b) need (c) think (d) play
19. Adam always helps his friends. He is very
 (a) help (b) helpless (c) helpful (d) bad
20. are very dangerous.
 (a) Camels (b) Fish (c) Birds (d) Crocodiles
21. The is a small type of foxes that live in the desert.
 (a) bird (b) camel (c) fennec fox (d) snake
22. live in the deserts.
 (a) Bears (b) Camels (c) Dolphins (d) Fish
23. Camels are perfect for the
 (a) sea (b) river (c) lake (d) desert

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

job – scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous. They do a very important (1) job . They eat (2) insects ,birds and lizards. This (3) controls the number of these small animal . We sometimes think some animals are (4) scary or ugly, but they are all important.

huge – spiders – agree – snake – farmers

Last week, I visited the zoo with my parents. We saw many different animals there. The crocodile was (1) huge . The (2) snakes was scary. We saw many (3) spiders . My sister thought spiders were ugly! Mom told us (4) farmers like spiders because they eat insects.

helpful – important – huge – animals – food

In our country, there are many (1) animals . There are crocodiles. They're (2) huge and scary. There are also spiders. Spiders are very (3) helpful . They eat insects. Animals are all (4) important .

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tarek and Sara's favorite subject at school is science. This week, they are studying animals that live in Egypt. Camels and fennec foxes are animals that live in the desert. Snakes and crocodiles are dangerous, but they control the number of small animals. Spiders really look scary, but they are very helpful. They eat small insects. That's why farmers like them. All animals are important.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do snakes and crocodiles do?

They control the number of small animals.

2. Why do farmers like spiders?

Because they eat small insects.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about

- Ⓐ spiders and farmers Ⓑ Tarek and Sara Ⓒ animals in Egypt Ⓓ science lessons

4. Camels and are animals that live in the desert.

- Ⓐ spiders Ⓑ fennec foxes Ⓒ crocodiles Ⓓ insects

➔ Punctate the following:

1. farmers like spiders

Farmers like spiders.

2. They eat insects birds, and lizards

They eat insects, birds, and lizards.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. snakes are scary animals

(الدقهلية - 2024)

Snakes are scary animals.

(2) Lesson two "Amazing desert animals"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Camels have flat

- Ⓐ teeth Ⓑ legs Ⓒ feet Ⓓ humps

2. Camels are and beautiful.

- Ⓐ careful Ⓑ flat Ⓒ amazing Ⓓ delicious

3. Camels are for the desert.

- Ⓐ sad Ⓑ perfect Ⓒ bad Ⓓ large

4. Horses eat and drink fresh water.

- Ⓐ meat Ⓑ grass Ⓒ sand Ⓓ fish

5. We use to make clothes.

- Ⓐ fur Ⓑ eyes Ⓒ humps Ⓓ hair

6. Mom made a cake for my birthday.

- Ⓐ strong Ⓑ special Ⓒ noisy Ⓓ angry

7. Camels carry things and people to cross the

- Ⓐ sea Ⓑ lake Ⓒ river Ⓓ desert

8. We can get delicious from camels.

- Ⓐ fur Ⓑ cake Ⓒ eggs Ⓓ milk

9. Camels close their noses and eyes to stop the from coming in.

- Ⓐ air Ⓑ sand Ⓒ water Ⓓ light

10. Can you help me the street, please?

- Ⓐ live Ⓑ carry Ⓒ stop Ⓓ cross

11. A: How is a horse? B: It is about 459 kg.

- Ⓐ fast Ⓑ tall Ⓒ heavy Ⓓ long

(المنوفية - 2022)

12. Camels can live without for a long time.

- Ⓐ grass Ⓑ water Ⓒ air Ⓓ sleep

13. We can use camels' fur to make !

- Ⓐ bags Ⓑ clothes Ⓒ hats Ⓓ shoes

14. Camels have large, flat feet so they don't in sand.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ drink Ⓒ fly Ⓓ sink
15. I saw a/an movie with my family . I like it.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ boring Ⓒ amazing Ⓓ heavy
16. How is the horse? - It is 88 kph.
 Ⓐ fast Ⓑ long Ⓒ heavy Ⓓ old

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. The blue car is **faster** (**fast**) than the red one.
2. Apples are **healthier** (**healthy**) than candies.
3. Elephants are heavier **than** (**that**) giraffes.
4. The city is **noisier** (**noisy**) than the countryside.
5. Pizza is **more** (**as**) delicious than a fish.
6. The fennec fox is **smaller** (**small**) than other foxes.
7. A crocodile is **more** (**most**) dangerous than a fish.
8. How **tall** (**heavy**) is the horse? - It's about 1.4 - 1.8 meters tall.
9. How **heavy** (**fast**) is the horse ? - It is about 450 kg.
10. A turtle is **slower** (**slow**) than a rabbit.
11. Math is **more** (**most**) difficult than science.
12. The cat is **heavier** (**heavy**) than the mouse.
13. A snake is **more** (**much**) dangerous than a dog.
14. How **long** (**fast**) does the camel live ? - 40 years.
15. The park is **busier** (**busy**) during summer than winter.
16. The red flower is **more beautiful** (**beautiful**) than the yellow one.
17. The camel is stronger **than** (**then**) the horse.
18. Sami is **taller** (**tall**) than his sister.
19. Horses are **more** (**most**) beautiful than fennec foxes.
20. The school is bigger, **than** (**then**) the house.
21. I think the cat **nicer** (**nice**) than the dog. (القاهرة - 2024)
22. Ola's dress is **more** (**most**) colorful than my dress .
23. Nadia is more active **than** (**that**) Heba.
24. Marwa thinks that fennec foxes are **cuter** (**cute**) than crocodiles.
25. A crocodile is **bigger** (**big**) than a dog. (اسكندريه - 2024)
26. Cars are **more** (**most**) expensive than bikes.
27. The tiger is **faster** (**fast**) than all other animals.
1. The lion is **more dangerous** (**dangerous**) than the giraffe.
2. The bear is stronger **than** (**then**) the pelican. (المنوفيه - 2024)
3. The cell phone is **smaller** (**small**) than the laptop.
4. The car is **faster** (**fast**) than the bike.
5. The new house is **nicer** (**nice**) than the old one.
6. My cousin is **older** (**old**) than me.
7. My new car is **more expensive** (**expensive**) than yours.
8. I think math is easier **than** (**then**) science.
28. Camels live **longer** (**long**) than horses.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. camels are more beautiful than horses (القاهرة - 2024)

Camels are more beautiful than horses.

2. What's in a camel's hump

What's in a camel's hump?

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

live – grass – faster – eyes – look

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. They have large, beautiful (1) eyes. They can live in the desert, but they need people to (2) look after them. Horses can (3) live for 25 - 30 years. They're (4) faster than camels, but camels can live longer than horses.

②

fresh – teeth – grass – play – animal

I like animals. My favorite (1) animal is the horse. I like riding on their backs. Horses have strong (2) teeth. They have large beautiful eyes. They like to eat (3) grass. They drink (4) fresh water.

(3) Lesson three "The pelican and the bear"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Bears have sharp
 (a) claws (b) tails (c) noses (d) fur
- I feel I want something to eat.
 (a) sad (b) thirsty (c) hungry (d) angry
- She's of animals, so she doesn't like to touch them.
 (a) happy (b) scared (c) kind (d) strong
- The is a large animal that has paws and sharp claws.
 (a) pelican (b) bear (c) pear (d) fish
- A pelican and a bear are in the
 (a) sea (b) desert (c) pond (d) river
- They are both looking at a big, juicy
 (a) meat (b) chicken (c) fish (d) fruit
- A: How do you, pelican? B: I am hungry.
 (a) watch (b) feed (c) feel (d) fly
- The bear lifted its to take the fish out of the water.
 (a) paw (b) beak (c) head (d) ears
- The is a big white bird that has a long beak.
 (a) fish (b) bee (c) pelican (d) bear
- The bear is bigger and than the pelican.
 (a) smaller (b) stronger (c) weaker (d) thinner
- The pelican uses its to catch fish.
 (a) beak (b) paw (c) hair (d) neck
- A pelican opens its to catch the fish.
 (a) claw (b) beak (c) hand (d) paw
- A pelican has a to eat with.
 (a) wing (b) tail (c) beak (d) paw

(الدرقية - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

Beak – paw – juicy – water – lifts

A pelican and a bear are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, (1) juicy fish. The bear (2) lifts its paw. The pelican opens its (3) beak. It is ready to take the fish out of (4) water.

paws – scary – eat – bears – sky

I'm soha. I love animals. My favorite animals are (1) bears. Bears have strong (2) paws and sharp claws. They also have sharp teeth. They are (3) scary animals. They (4) eat fish.

paw – looking – stronger – beak – water

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are (1) **looking** at a big juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) **paw**. The pelican opens its (3) **beak**. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear is (4) **stronger** than the pelican.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Where s my fish

Where's my fish?

2. i m bigger and stronger than you

I'm bigger and stronger than you.

(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The fennec is smaller than other foxes.
 (a) gazelle (b) camel (c) crocodile (d) **fox**
- Rhim gazelles live in the
 (a) forest (b) North Africa (c) **Sahara Desert** (d) sea
- They walk around looking for grass and to eat.
 (a) **leaves** (b) worms (c) birds (d) insects
- The rhim gazelles yellow-white protects them from the sun.
 (a) feet (b) horns (c) **coat** (d) head
- Both rhim gazelles and fennec fox live in the
 (a) rivers (b) **desert** (c) mountains (d) farms
- The fennec fox has thick It helps the fennec fox stay warm.
 (a) beak (b) feather (c) **fur** (d) wing
- The rhim gazelle have long
 (a) **horns** (b) wings (c) feathers (d) beaks
- The fennec fox has ears.
 (a) **big** (b) small (c) little (d) tiny
- Rhim gazelles eat grass,, and plants.
 (a) fish (b) **leaves** (c) mice (d) insects
- A: How is a fennec fox? B: It weighs around 1 kilogram.
 (a) **heavy** (b) long (c) tall (d) old
- The eats insects, lizards, and small mica.
 (a) camel (b) rhim gazelle (c) pelican (d) **fennec fox**
- The fennec fox loses from its ears when it is hot in the desert.
 (a) fur (b) food (c) water (d) **heat**
- It's very in the desert.
 (a) tall (b) hot (c) long (d) slow

(الرفهليت - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

sun – beautiful – live – grass – camels

There are lots of desert animals and the rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very (1) **beautiful**. They eat (2) **grass**, leaves and plants. They don't need to drink a lot of water like (3) **camels**. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the (4) **sun**.

②

desert – kilogram – lizards – ears – heat

The fennec fox is the smallest of all the world's foxes. It is called desert fox. It lives in the (1) **desert** of North Africa. It weighs only one (2) **kilogram**. It has big (3) **ears**. It eats (4) **lizards** and insects.

3

heat – horns – insects – foxes – fur

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other (1) **foxes** . Its ears are big, really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear (2) **insects** and small animals. During the day, it is hot in desert. The fennec fox loses (3) **heat** from its ears. At night, it's cold. The fennec fox's thick (4) **fur** keep it warm.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الفهم – إدارة إسطا التعليمية - 2024)

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves, and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. Rhim gazelles live for about 14 years. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where do rhim gazelles live?

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert.

2. Summarize the text in two sentence.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Rhim gazelles eat

Ⓐ meat

Ⓑ leaves

Ⓒ small animals

Ⓓ insects

4. Rhim gazelles have horns.

Ⓐ short

Ⓑ small

Ⓒ long

Ⓓ big

➔ Punctate the following:

1. does a fennec fox live in Egypt

Does a fennec fox live in Egypt?

2. how heavy is a rhim gazelle

How heavy is a rhim gazelle?

3. The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North africa

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa.

(3) Unit three "Why do we grow plant"

(1) Lesson one "plants and seeds"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We mango trees in our garden.

Ⓐ shout

Ⓑ swim

Ⓒ kill

Ⓓ grow

2. The farmer the crops to help them grow.

Ⓐ waters

Ⓑ reads

Ⓒ writes

Ⓓ speaks

3. The sun helps the grow into plants.

Ⓐ boats

Ⓑ chairs

Ⓒ seeds

Ⓓ desk

4. We need good to grow good plants.

Ⓐ seeds

Ⓑ books

Ⓒ bags

Ⓓ pens

5. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called

Ⓐ information

Ⓑ fraction

Ⓒ germination

Ⓓ cutting

6. The grows above the soil.

Ⓐ water

Ⓑ soil

Ⓒ shoot

Ⓓ root

7. The green of the plants are amazing.

Ⓐ claws

Ⓑ leaves

Ⓒ beaks

Ⓓ candies

8. We grow white flowers on the in our apartment.

Ⓐ zoo

Ⓑ balcony

Ⓒ park

Ⓓ museum

9. Put the seed in the and water it.
 (a) soil (b) fridge (c) shoot (d) air
10. grow under the soil. (الإسماعيل - 2024)
 (a) Shoots (b) Flowers (c) Roots (d) Leaves
11. Watermelons have black inside.
 (a) seeds (b) leaves (c) roots (d) flowers
12. Plants need and water to grow.
 (a) fruits (b) sunlight (c) sugar (d) flowers
13. We need and water to grow plants.
 (a) fruits (b) leaves (c) soil (d) balcony
14. To grow a plant, you need to put a in the soil.
 (a) leave (b) seed (c) shoot (d) root
15. I the plant every day, and it grows flowers.
 (a) play (b) eat (c) sleep (d) water
16. I have a big in my house.
 (a) seed (b) root (c) soil (d) balcony
17. We a seed, and it grows.
 (a) plant (b) come (c) take (d) become
18. The is the part of the plant that grows taller above the soil.
 (a) seed (b) root (c) shoot (d) fruit
19. Tomato have seeds
 (a) upside (b) inside (c) outside (d) beside
20. Tomatoes are before they are red. (البحر - 2024)
 (a) red (b) blue (c) white (d) green
21. You need to wait for the tomato to be fruits to eat them.
 (a) shoots (b) leaves (c) flowers (d) seeds
22. When the shoot grows taller above the soil, it usually has green
 (a) soil (b) seeds (c) roots (d) leaves

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

grows – roots – leaves – sunlight – red

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1) sunlight and water, so it can grow. The seed grows (2) roots under the soil. Then it (3) grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows (4) leaves and flowers. That is called germination.

②

water – flowers – soil – roots – shoot

(القادر - 2024)

We put a seed in the (1) soil. The seed needs sunlight and (2) water. So it can grow. The seed grows (3) roots under the soil. Then, it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and (4) flowers.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Tomatoes are delicious and healthy. We use tomatoes in most of our food. We grow tomatoes on our balcony. Mom always takes fresh tomatoes and makes us delicious salad. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seed and grow new tomatoes. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. Tomatoes are green before they are red.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence?

There are many steps to grow tomatoes.

2. What does mom use the fresh tomatoes for?

She uses them to make delicious salad.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text is about " plants "

- Ⓐ Guava Ⓑ Tomato Ⓒ Mango Ⓓ peas

4. We should the plant every day to grow.

- Ⓐ ask Ⓑ hurt Ⓒ water Ⓓ cut

We plant tomatoes on the balcony. We are happy to see the plants grow. They have fruits and flowers. Tomatoes are green before they are red. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant grows. That is called the germination process. Our science teacher says plants need sunlight and water so that they can grow.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What do tomatoes have inside ?

Tomatoes have seeds inside.

2. What is the germination process ?

We plant a seed under the soil, and the plant grows

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about

- Ⓐ farm Ⓑ science Ⓒ soil Ⓓ germination

4. Plants need and water to grow.

- Ⓐ flowers Ⓑ sunlight Ⓒ science Ⓓ fruits

➔ Punctate the following:

1. can you see the leaves and the flowers

Can you see the leaves and the flowers?

2. that's awesome! I found a red tomato

(الترقية - 2024)

That's awesome! I found a red tomato.

(2) Lesson two "plants in Egypt"

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a place where living things live and grow.

- Ⓐ habitat Ⓑ office Ⓒ first station Ⓓ hospital

2. Lotus flowers grow near the They need a lot of water.

- Ⓐ desert Ⓑ rocks Ⓒ river Ⓓ mountain

3. work in the agricultural habitat.

- Ⓐ Engineers Ⓑ Farmers Ⓒ Vets Ⓓ Teachers

4. Acacia grows in the desert

- Ⓐ ice Ⓑ hobby Ⓒ habitat Ⓓ room

5. Silver rings are expensive, but gold rings are the expensive rings.

- Ⓐ more Ⓑ most Ⓒ less Ⓓ much

6. The daisy is the smallest flower and it lives the

- Ⓐ short Ⓑ shortest Ⓒ shorter Ⓓ a short

7. Butterflies are the colorful insects.

- Ⓐ more Ⓑ many Ⓒ most Ⓓ much

8. Acacia tree grows in habitat. It doesn't need a lot of water.

- Ⓐ rivers Ⓑ agricultural Ⓒ desert Ⓓ lakes

(البصرة - 2024)

9. Farmer work in the habitat. They grow food for us to eat.

- Ⓐ desert Ⓑ agricultural Ⓒ river Ⓓ lake

10. Both bean plants and grow in the agricultural habitat.

- Ⓐ reed Ⓑ acacia Ⓒ orange tree Ⓓ tamarisk

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. My city is the **nicest** (**nice**) place to live.
2. I think the crocodile is the **scariest** (**scarier**) animal.
3. He is the **fastest** (**faster**) boy in our class.
4. My brother is **the** (**then**) strongest player in the team
5. Elephants are the **biggest** (**bigger**) animals.
6. Which animal is the **scariest** (**scary**) ?
7. The sunflower is the **heaviest** (**heavy**) .
8. The giraffe is the **tallest** (**taller**) land animal.
9. The Sahara Desert is the **hottest** (**hot**) desert.
10. I think pizza is the **most** (**more**) delicious food.
11. Soha is the **tallest** (**tall**) girl in the class.
12. What is the **smallest** (**small**) bird in the world ?
13. This mountain is the **highest** (**higher**) mountain in the world.
14. Marwan is the **smartest** (**smart**) boy in math.
15. What is the **most** (**more**) expensive bag in the shop ?
16. The blue whale is the **biggest** (**bigger**) animal.
17. My father is the **bravest** (**brave**) person in my family.
18. The turtle is **the** (**than**) slowest animal.
19. The elephant is the **heaviest** (**heavier**) land animal.
20. Hala's red dress is the **nicest** (**nice**) one.
21. Crocodiles and snakes are the **most** (**more**) dangerous animals.
22. A snake is the **scariest** (**scary**) animal.
23. Bikes are **slower** (**slow**) than cars.
24. The lion is the **most** (**more**) dangerous animal.
25. Roses live longer than daisies. But sunflowers live the **longest** (**long**).
26. Sunflowers are beautiful, but roses are the **most** (**more**) beautiful flowers.
27. Ali is the **kindest** (**kind**). He helps all his friends.
28. History books are the **most** (**more**) interesting books.
29. Noha is the **best** (**good**) student in the class.
30. My brother thinks math is **the worst** (**bad**) subject.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

①

farmers – rivers – tamarisk – agricultural – habitat

Plants grow in different habitats. Bean plants and orange trees grow in the **(1) agricultural** habitat. Farmers work there. Reed and lotus flowers grow near **(2) rivers** and lakes. Acacia and **(3) tamarisk** trees grow in the desert. Plants that grow in this **(4) habitat** don't need much water to grow.

①

rain – seed – rivers – desert – farmers

(الإسماعيل - 2024)

In the agricultural habitat, **(1) farmers** grow food for us to eat. Plants near the **(2) rivers** and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the **(3) desert** don't need a lot of water. There isn't much **(4) rain** in the desert so we can find the acacia plant and tamarisk there.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

A habitat is a place where living things live and grow. There are many habitats. In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Rivers and lakes are also plants habitats. Plants **near** the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. But in the desert habitat, plants don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert. Acacia plant and tamarisk grow in the desert.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What is a habitat ?

Habitat is a place where living things live and grow.

2. What plants can we find near rivers and lakes?

Lotus flowers and reed.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is about " " .

- Ⓐ Plant habitats Ⓑ Clothes Ⓒ festivals Ⓓ Houses

The underlined word "**near**" is the opposite of

- Ⓐ far Ⓑ close Ⓒ behind Ⓓ about

➔ Punctate the following:

1. how big is the flower

How big is the flower?

2. the sunflower is the heaviest flower

The sunflower is the heaviest flower.

3. how long does it live

How long does it live?

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. air is very dangerous for our bodies.

- Ⓐ Clean Ⓑ Healthy Ⓒ Polluted Ⓓ Green

2. She fresh fruits at the market.

- Ⓐ made Ⓑ bought Ⓒ changed Ⓓ decided

3. They plant many crops and raise animals on the

- Ⓐ tree Ⓑ sunlight Ⓒ air Ⓓ farm

4. Someone who always helps people is

- Ⓐ helpful Ⓑ helpless Ⓒ helpfully Ⓓ help

5. Soha is and cute.

- Ⓐ beautiful Ⓑ beauty Ⓒ more beauty Ⓓ as beauty

6. These dresses are

- Ⓐ color Ⓑ colors Ⓒ colorful Ⓓ colorfully

7. She usually about her children.

- Ⓐ careful Ⓑ cares Ⓒ carefully Ⓓ careless

8. My sister likes the of nature.

- Ⓐ beauty Ⓑ beautiful Ⓒ beautifully Ⓓ more beautiful

9. When there is no water in the land, it becomes

- Ⓐ wet Ⓑ dry Ⓒ good Ⓓ fresh

10. They used to water the seeds.

- Ⓐ rainwater Ⓑ air Ⓒ heat Ⓓ sun

11. I don't like the air in the city.

- Ⓐ clear Ⓑ fresh Ⓒ polluted Ⓓ clean

12. He is of his parents. They did many useful things.

- Ⓐ scared Ⓑ afraid Ⓒ full Ⓓ proud

13. The air is polluted and it's noisy in the

- Ⓐ farm Ⓑ city Ⓒ desert Ⓓ village

14. Lucas's grandparents used rainwater to the seeds.

- Ⓐ buy Ⓑ bring Ⓒ water Ⓓ plant

15. A is a thousand million.

- Ⓐ billion Ⓑ hundred Ⓒ thousand Ⓓ hundred million

16. Mona is always when she crosses the road.
 Ⓐ beautiful Ⓑ careful Ⓒ colorful Ⓓ useful
17. Nour had two of cake.
 Ⓐ slippers Ⓑ swans Ⓒ slices Ⓓ switch
18. Use the to turn the lights on, please.
 Ⓐ slice Ⓑ swan Ⓒ sweet Ⓓ switch
19. Nader helps his mother and the floor.
 Ⓐ sleeps Ⓑ swims Ⓒ sweeps Ⓓ switch
20. Mom has a pair of blue She only wear them at home.
 Ⓐ switches Ⓑ slippers Ⓒ sweets Ⓓ slices

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Salma is a beautiful (beauty) girl.
 2. My brother likes colorful (colorfully) flowers.
 3. Ali is a careful (care) driver. He drives carefully.
 4. This book is useful (use). I will read it again.
 5. The flowers in the garden are very beautiful (beauty).
 6. Be careful (care) when you cut the vegetables with a knife.
 7. Shady is helpful (help) and kind to other people.
 8. Noha likes wearing colorful (color) clothes.
 9. Reading is very useful (use).
 10. My dad uses some useful (use) tools to fix his car.
 11. Be careful (care) when you use the knife.
 12. Marwa has a beautiful (beauty) pink dress.
 13. Parrots are colorful (color) birds. You can see them at the zoo.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

flowers – green – billion – proud – life

My grandparents had a farm. They had a good (1) life there. They grew many fruits. They used rainwater to water the plants. They needed about a (2) billion liters of water a year. They used plants to make the land (3) green. They planted trees and (4) flowers.

desert land – green – rainwater – life – seeds

Today, Lara lives on a special farm with her mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good (1) life. They plant millions of (3) seeds to make the land green. They use billions of liters of (2) rainwater to plant the seeds. Lara knows it's important to turn the (4) desert land into farmland because it helps them get more crops.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds, They used rainwater to water the seed. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land. Today, Adam lives on the farm with his parents. They're very happy and they have a good life. His parents are very proud of his grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Summarize the text in one sentence.

Adam's grandparents made the dry land into green.

2. What did Adam's grandparents bring to the land?

The brought animals to the land.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. They planted millions of
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ flowers Ⓒ festivals Ⓓ farms
4. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to Adam's
 Ⓐ friends Ⓑ parents Ⓒ grandparents Ⓓ sisters

➔ Punctate the following:

1. i live on a farm

I live on a farm.

2. who is lucas

Who is Lucas ?

3. He lives on a farm in the united states

He lives on a farm in the United States.**(4.5) Lesson four and five "writing"**

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The sunflower opens and the sun.
 (a) closes (b) faces (c) puts (d) drops
2. Baskets and sandals in Ancient Egypt were made from
 (a) glass (b) papyrus (c) cotton (d) water
3. The sunflower dies and the life begins again.
 (a) cycle (b) time (c) boat (d) style
4. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm to grow.
 (a) feather (b) stem (c) forest (d) weather
5. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make and baskets.
 (a) beds (b) clothes (c) sandals (d) walls
6. was famous because Ancient Egyptians used it to make paper.
 (a) Tomato (b) Sunflower (c) papyrus (d) sandal
7. Papyrus needs a lot of water and weather to grow quickly.
 (a) hot (b) cold (c) warm (d) freezing
8. , you plant the sunflower seed in the soil.
 (a) First (b) After first (c) After (d) Finally
9. When the seed , it grows roots under the soil.
 (a) opens (b) germinates (c) faces (d) drops
10. You need to put the seed in the and water it to grow.
 (a) basket (b) river (c) sunlight (d) roots
11. a few weeks, the plant grows leaves and flowers.
 (a) Next (b) After (c) Finally (d) First
12. When the tomato plant dies, it its seeds.
 (a) grows (b) plants (c) germinates (d) drops
13. After about 4 months, the opens and faces the sun.
 (a) shoot (b) seed (c) root (d) sunflower
14. We need to grow plant.
 (a) seeds (b) trees (c) fruits (d) flower
15. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the
 (a) sea (b) beach (c) farm (d) river
16. Ancient Egyptians used to make paper.
 (a) sunflowers (b) papyrus (c) reed (d) rose

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

useful – drink – grow – oil – yellow

A sunflower is a big flower. It's always **(1) yellow** in color. Sunflowers need a lot of sun to **(2) grow**. Sunflower seeds also have a lot of **(3) oil** in them and people use it for cooking a lot of kinds of foods such as rice, fried potatoes and onions. It's a very beautiful and **(4) useful** flower.

roots – sun – After that – germinates – months

First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You water it. Next, the seed (1) **germinates** and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2) **After that**, the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 (3) **months**, it opens and faces the (4) **sun**.

warm – sandals – famous – river – mountain

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1) **famous** because Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2) **sandals** and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3) **warm** weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the (4) **river**.

➔ **Read the following then answer the questions:**

Ancient Egyptians worked very hard. Most of them worked as farmers. Farmers in Ancient Egypt were growing a lot of plants near the river. They grew a lot of different plants. Papyrus was a very special plant. It was very useful to the Ancient Egyptians. It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow. It is a very special plant.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where did papyrus grow ?

It grew in the Nile Delta near the Nile River.

2. What did the Ancient Egyptians use papyrus to make ?

The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus plants to make paper.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about " " .

- Ⓐ Lotus Ⓑ Rose Ⓒ Papyrus Ⓓ Tomatoes

4. Papyrus needs a lot of To grow.

- Ⓐ sand Ⓑ waves Ⓒ water Ⓓ paper

➔ **Punctate the following:**

1. why do farmers grow sunflowers

Why do farmers grow sunflowers?

2. Ancient egyptian used papyrus to make paper

Ancient Egyptian used papyrus to make paper.

3. why do farmers grow sunflower

Why do farmers grow sunflower?

4. papyrus grow in the nile delta

Papyrus grow in the Nile Delta.

(4) Unit four "Where do you live"**(1) Lesson one**➔ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. I can see the whole street from the

- Ⓐ balcony Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ kitchen

2. In the desert people live in

- Ⓐ houseboats Ⓑ balconies Ⓒ apartments Ⓓ tents

3. I sleep in a big It has two big beds.

- Ⓐ bathroom Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ living room Ⓓ kitchen

4. I play computer games in the where there is a big TV.

- Ⓐ kitchen Ⓑ living room Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ balcony

5. My mom cooks food in the

- Ⓐ bedroom Ⓑ kitchen Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ living room

6. My friend lives on a She loves living on water.

- Ⓐ tent Ⓑ houseboat Ⓒ garden Ⓓ balcony

7. My aunt moved to a new last week. It's in a big building.
 Ⓐ tent Ⓑ houseboat Ⓒ house Ⓓ room
8. You shouldn't play in the
 Ⓐ club Ⓑ street Ⓒ garden Ⓓ park
9. The is the room where I eat dinner with my family.
 Ⓐ garden Ⓑ bathroom Ⓒ dining room Ⓓ balcony
10. Omar likes watching television with his family in the
 Ⓐ living room Ⓑ kitchen Ⓒ tent Ⓓ bathroom
11. He takes a shower in the
 Ⓐ living room Ⓑ bedroom Ⓒ bathroom Ⓓ garden
12. My mother is making dinner in the
 Ⓐ houseboat Ⓑ dining room Ⓒ kitchen Ⓓ balcony
13. You should your room by yourself.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ sleep Ⓒ organize Ⓓ move
14. are made of cloth.
 Ⓐ Houseboats Ⓑ Tents Ⓒ Houses Ⓓ Apartments

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

beds – garden – rooms – living room – house

(نورسبحر - 2024)

My grandparents lives in a big **(1) house** It's on the corner of the city. It has many rooms. There are two **(2) beds** in my bedroom. They have a big **(3) living room** with television and a couch. I love playing with my cousins in the **(4) garden**

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(السويح - 2024)

My name is Hazem. I'm in grade four. I live in a big house with my family. We have three bedrooms and one bathroom. My mom cooks food in the kitchen. We watch television in the living room. My favorite room is the bedroom. I like to read and do my homework in my bedroom. I like to help my father on the farm. He grows tomatoes and onions for us.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Hazem watch television?

In the living room.

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

Hazem lives in a big house with his family. He loves the house.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Hazem's father is a
 Ⓐ teacher Ⓑ doctor Ⓒ farmer Ⓓ fisherman
4. The opposite of the underlined word "big" is
 Ⓐ huge Ⓑ small Ⓒ enormous Ⓓ giant

➔ Punctate the following:

1. they have a big balcony

They have a big balcony.

2. which is your favorite room

(الفاهرة - 2024)

Which is your favorite room?

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My sister goes to to learn.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ shopping mall Ⓒ post office Ⓓ office
2. Noha went to the when she was sick.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ office Ⓒ hospital Ⓓ supermarket

3. They went to the to buy food.
 Ⓐ supermarket Ⓑ shopping mall Ⓒ office Ⓓ hospital
4. Can you tell me where the is? I want to send a letter.
 Ⓐ hospital Ⓑ school Ⓒ post office Ⓓ office
5. Ola works in a/an It has many desks and computers.
 Ⓐ hospital Ⓑ park Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ office
6. Nadia went to the to buy some new clothes.
 Ⓐ park Ⓑ shopping mall Ⓒ office Ⓓ school
7. Fish live water.
 Ⓐ on Ⓑ in Ⓒ behind Ⓓ between
8. A: is the key? B: It's on the table.
 Ⓐ What Ⓑ Where Ⓒ When Ⓓ How
9. My school is of the shopping mall.
 Ⓐ next Ⓑ behind Ⓒ above Ⓓ in front
10. Ola's house is the school and the city park.
 Ⓐ between Ⓑ next to Ⓒ on Ⓓ behind
11. The bridge is the river.
 Ⓐ in Ⓑ under Ⓒ above Ⓓ next
12. The pet is hiding the door.
 Ⓐ in front Ⓑ between Ⓒ next Ⓓ behind
13. My house is to the Nile.
 Ⓐ in front Ⓑ above Ⓒ on Ⓓ next
14. A: Can you see the pen? B: It's the book.
 Ⓐ next Ⓑ between Ⓒ under Ⓓ in front
15. My book is the table. I can't see it. (الإسماعيليت - 2024)
 Ⓐ next Ⓑ in front of Ⓒ behind Ⓓ on
16. The hospital is the shopping mall and the park.
 Ⓐ next Ⓑ in front Ⓒ on Ⓓ between
17. Sara went to the to send a letter.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ hospital Ⓒ post office Ⓓ park
18. A: is the park? B: It's behind the office.
 Ⓐ When Ⓑ Why Ⓒ Where Ⓓ Who
19. A: Where can I send ? B: In the post office.
 Ⓐ food Ⓑ clothes Ⓒ letters Ⓓ games
20. Excuse me! Where is the ? I want to buy some food.
 Ⓐ school Ⓑ hospital Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ shopping mall
21. My dad goes to the when he feels sick.
 Ⓐ post office Ⓑ hospital Ⓒ office Ⓓ supermarket
22. I can buy some new at the shopping mall.
 Ⓐ shoes Ⓑ houses Ⓒ tents Ⓓ letters
23. My children never go to the on Friday. It's a holiday.
 Ⓐ supermarket Ⓑ hospital Ⓒ school Ⓓ shopping mall

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. Where (How) is my book? – On the table.
2. There is a chair next (in) to the table.
3. Put your books in (under) your bag, please.
4. The shopping mall is in front of (on) the bank. (القاهرة - 2024)
5. The roots grow under (behind) the soil.
6. The house is between (next) the school and the supermarket.
7. The book is on (in) the table. (أسوان - 2024)

8. Nadeen is hiding **behind** (in front of) the tree.
9. The cat is **under** (on) the table. I can't see it.
10. There are ten apples **in** (in front) the fruit basket.
11. A: **Where** (What) is the city bank, please? B: It's next to the park.
12. Look at the beautiful kite flying **above** (under) the building.
13. The car is **between** (in) the bike and the bus.
14. Where **is** (are) the shopping mall.
15. The kitchen is next **to** (of) the living room.

(القاهرة - المرح - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

play – school – place – supermarket – buy

(القاهرة - 2024)

I love my town. It is a good (1) **place** to live in. It is small, but it has (2) **supermarkets** offices, schools, and many other places. I walk to (3) **school** every morning to learn. My school is next to the park. I (4) **play** in the park with my friends.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيزة - 2024)

My name is Soha. I live in a small city. My city has stores, offices, a shopping mall, and a school. I go to school by bus. My school is next to the hospital. I go to the park to play tennis. I go to the supermarket to buy different foods and drinks. I love my city.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where does Soha buy different foods and drinks?

At the supermarket.

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

Soha lives in a small city. The city has interesting places.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Soha's school is the hospital.

Ⓐ behind Ⓑ next to Ⓒ in front of Ⓓ between

4. Soha plays tennis in the

Ⓐ school Ⓑ park Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ between

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(المنوفية - 2024)

1. It is hot today. We need to turn on the

Ⓐ bus Ⓑ van Ⓒ fan Ⓓ fish

2. Excuse me! is the post office?

Ⓐ When Ⓑ Why Ⓒ Where Ⓓ Who

3. To go to the mall, go ahead, then turn left.

Ⓐ street Ⓑ straight Ⓒ right Ⓓ corner

4. Hana's house is the supermarket and the school.

Ⓐ between Ⓑ next Ⓒ in front Ⓓ on

5. the second left. My house is on the right.

Ⓐ Travel Ⓑ Go Ⓒ Take Ⓓ Come

6. Sherif English and Chinese.

Ⓐ says Ⓑ meets Ⓒ speaks Ⓓ shouts

7. The hospital is the corner.

Ⓐ at Ⓑ in Ⓒ with Ⓓ on

8. Go straight and left.

Ⓐ take Ⓑ turn Ⓒ see Ⓓ come

9. The post office is the left.

Ⓐ in Ⓑ on Ⓒ at Ⓓ between

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- Excuse me! **Where** (What) is the supermarket, please?
- Turn** (Turning) left, my house is on the corner.
- Go** (Went) straight ahead. Then turn left.
- The school is **on** (in) the corner of South Street.
- Take** (Took) the second left at the supermarket.
- The hospital is **between** (next) the school and the supermarket.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

summer – down – meet – parents – world

(القاهرة - 2024)

I live on a boat in the summer. My (1) **parents** work on tourist boats, so I go with them. We travel up and (2) **down** the Nile. I like the (3) **summer** very much. I see many interesting places and I meet people from all over the (4) **world**.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My friend Sherif is from Aswan. He lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile. He likes the summer very much. He sees many **interesting** places and he meets people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with tourists.

A: Answer the following questions:

- Where do Sherif's parents work?

On tourist boats.

- Where is Sherif from?

He is from Aswan.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sherif likes the very much.

Ⓐ winter Ⓑ fall Ⓒ summer Ⓓ spring

- The underlined word "interesting" means.

Ⓐ nice Ⓑ boring Ⓒ bad Ⓓ old

➔ Punctate the following:

- my friend Sherif lives on a boat

My friend Sherif lives on a boat.

- i can speak English and arabic.

I can speak English and Arabic.

(الغريب - 2024)

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The in Hurghada are beautiful. We can swim and play there. (الغريب - 2024)

Ⓐ schools Ⓑ offices Ⓒ beaches Ⓓ stores
- Mariam lives in a called Hurghada.

Ⓐ city Ⓑ village Ⓒ country Ⓓ beach
- About 190,000 people in Hurghada.

Ⓐ come Ⓑ swim Ⓒ live Ⓓ work
- The is where tourists can go on safaris.

Ⓐ beach Ⓑ park Ⓒ bazaars Ⓓ Sahara Desert
- We can buy beautiful things at the in Sahl Hasheesh.

Ⓐ bazaars Ⓑ tourists Ⓒ photos Ⓓ gardens
- We can buy food at the where Mona works.

Ⓐ desert Ⓑ beach Ⓒ supermarket Ⓓ safari park

7. When we buy the food, Mona the food is fresh.
 Ⓐ eats Ⓑ sells Ⓒ sees Ⓓ checks
8. The worker at the supermarket helps us when we can't something.
 Ⓐ find Ⓑ live Ⓒ go Ⓓ meet
9. There's a beach and lots of things to do in Hurghada.
 Ⓐ scary Ⓑ boring Ⓒ interesting Ⓓ strange
10. Soha is She helps everyone in her class.
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ kind Ⓒ noisy Ⓓ ugly

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

kind – food – supermarket – fresh – office

This is Hana. She works at the (1) **supermarket** near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy (2) **food** Hana checks the food is (3) **fresh** She helps us when we can't find something. She is very (4) **kind** and happy. We all love her.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live in a city called Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here. In Hurghada, there is a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safari. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. **It** has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Where is Hurghada?

It is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.

2. What are there in Sahl Hasheesh?

It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 Ⓐ Cairo Ⓑ Aswan Ⓒ Luxor Ⓓ Hurghada
4. The underlined word "it" refer to
 Ⓐ the Red Sea Ⓑ the beaches Ⓒ Sahl Hasheesh Ⓓ Sahara desert

➔ Punctate the following:

1. mona works at the supermarket

(المطبخ - 2024)

Mona works at the supermarket.

2. how many people live there

How many people live there?

(5) Unit five "Where do you work"

(1) Lesson one

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Youssef is a/an He loves making things work.
 Ⓐ bus driver Ⓑ garbage collector Ⓒ electrician Ⓓ mail carrier
2. Here's the He collects the trash.
 Ⓐ mail carrier Ⓑ bus driver Ⓒ garbage collector Ⓓ electrician
3. A plumber fixes and faucets.
 Ⓐ chairs Ⓑ pipes Ⓒ balls Ⓓ cars
4. My room was yesterday. I had to tidy it.
 Ⓐ difficult Ⓑ wet Ⓒ messy Ⓓ young

5. A/An drives to many different places.
 Ⓐ mechanic Ⓑ driver Ⓒ plumber Ⓓ electrician
6. A/An brings us the parcels.
 Ⓐ garbage collector Ⓑ bus driver Ⓒ mail carrier Ⓓ mechanic
7. The helps us fix pipes to get water. He is very important. (المنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ tourist guide Ⓑ plumber Ⓒ electrician Ⓓ mail carrier
8. A helps us all. He takes away all the trash. (المنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ mail carrier Ⓑ garbage collector Ⓒ builder Ⓓ mechanic
9. The fix the cars and buses. (بورسعيد - 2024)
 Ⓐ electricians' Ⓑ mechanics Ⓒ garbage collector Ⓓ plumbers
10. Cairo produces around 20 million tons of every year.
 Ⓐ pipes Ⓑ parcels Ⓒ garbage Ⓓ faucets
11. Plumbers fix pipes and (القاهرة - 2024)
 Ⓐ tables Ⓑ chairs Ⓒ cars Ⓓ faucets
12. The arrived. Let's get on the bus.
 Ⓐ mechanic Ⓑ bus driver Ⓒ garbage collector Ⓓ plumber
13. My clothes become after raining.
 Ⓐ dry Ⓑ hoy Ⓒ wet Ⓓ near
14. I was much better at pipes and faucets than cars.
 Ⓐ fixing Ⓑ driving Ⓒ eating Ⓓ reading
15. We need a mechanic to our car.
 Ⓐ drive Ⓑ paint Ⓒ play Ⓓ fix
16. A mail carrier brings us
 Ⓐ pipes Ⓑ faucets Ⓒ parcels Ⓓ cars

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

Mail carrier – mechanic – trash – electrician – faucets

(القاهرة - 2024)

Different people have different jobs. A plumber fixes pipes and (1) **faucets**. A mechanic fixes cars. An (2) **electrician** makes things work. A (3) **mail carrier** has our parcels. A garbage collector takes the (4) **trash**. I think being a bus driver is the most interesting job. You drive to many different places and help lots of people.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(المنوفيت - 2024)

All jobs are important. There are many workers that help us. A plumber fixes pipes and faucets. A mail carrier delivers our parcels. An electrician makes things work. A garbage collector takes out the trash. A bus driver is the most interesting job. He drives people to many different places and helps lots of people. A mechanic fixes cars and buses. All these workers should work together to make our life easier.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does a mechanic do?

A mechanic fixes cars and buses.

2. Why should all workers work together?

To make our life easier.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about

- Ⓐ food Ⓑ animals Ⓒ jobs Ⓓ places

4. The word "....." in the text means garbage.

- Ⓐ trash Ⓑ faucets Ⓒ fixes Ⓓ places

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Dad do you like your job

Dad, do you like your job?

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Electricity is but we need it.
 Ⓐ safe Ⓑ dangerous Ⓒ wet Ⓓ slow
2. We should use electricity
 Ⓐ fast Ⓑ slowly Ⓒ quickly Ⓓ safely
3. To make the machine work, put the into a socket.
 Ⓐ bug Ⓑ storm Ⓒ plug Ⓓ hand
4. are Ola's new tools.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ This Ⓒ The Ⓓ Those
5. Don't touch socket. It's dangerous.
 Ⓐ than Ⓑ these Ⓒ those Ⓓ this
6. house over there is very old.
 Ⓐ They Ⓑ These Ⓒ That Ⓓ Those
7. is such a nice place to live in.
 Ⓐ These Ⓑ They Ⓒ This Ⓓ Those
8. An electric shock can us.
 Ⓐ travel Ⓑ practice Ⓒ use Ⓓ burn
9. We sometimes see a flash of in a storm. (الطنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ faucet Ⓑ water Ⓒ shock Ⓓ lightning
10. Never touch anything electrical with hands. It's very dangerous. (الطنوفيت - 2024)
 Ⓐ cute Ⓑ dry Ⓒ wet Ⓓ small
11. are my books.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ Those Ⓒ This Ⓓ The
12. bird is so near. I can see it well.
 Ⓐ That Ⓑ This Ⓒ They Ⓓ Those

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. This is (are) the mail carrier. (الإسكندريه - 2024)
2. Those are (is) my pencils. (القاهرة - 2024)
3. That is (are) your pen. (البحيرة - 2024)
4. These are (is) the electrician's tools. (دمياط - 2024)
5. This is (are) a socket. (القاهرة - 2024)
6. Look at that (those) butterfly outside! It's flying away.
7. These (This) are the plumber's tools. (القاهرة - 2024)
8. This car is (are) very expensive.
9. Nour found those (that) shells on the beach last summer.
10. That (Those) cloud look like a teddy bear.
11. These (This) are Noha and Ola. They are my best friends.
12. Can you get that (those) apple on the cupboard?
13. Those (That) mountains are very high.
14. Let's water these (this) plants together.
15. These (This) shoes look very expensive.
16. Those (That) flowers over there are very beautiful.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

electrician – fast – year – flash – dangerous

Mazen wants to be an **(1) electrician**. Electricity is very **(2) dangerous** so he will study and practice it for years. He always buys books about electricity. He learns that electricity travels very **(3) fast** close to the speed of light. In a storm, we sometimes see a **(4) flash** of lightning.

➔ Punctate the following:

1. is electricity dangerous

(الفقرة - 2023)

Is electricity dangerous?

(3) Lesson three

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hana used the to open old radios and cell phones.
 Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ tape measure Ⓒ screwdriver Ⓓ cousins
- Amir is always He's never angry.
 Ⓐ careful Ⓑ sad Ⓒ sorry Ⓓ patient
- My daughter is a/an She is eighteen.
 Ⓐ child Ⓑ baby Ⓒ adult Ⓓ cousin
- Talia always carried a tape and a pencil.
 Ⓐ measure Ⓑ doll Ⓒ block Ⓓ screwdriver
- My sister is She loves to know everything.
 Ⓐ patient Ⓑ curious Ⓒ favorite Ⓓ little
- My father is an electrician. He can fix
 Ⓐ tables Ⓑ pipes Ⓒ radios Ⓓ faucets
- I use my to speak with my friends.
 Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ cell phone Ⓒ screwdriver Ⓓ tape measure
- The teacher the new lesson very well.
 Ⓐ explained Ⓑ carried Ⓒ changed Ⓓ opened

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

- When Lara **was** **(is)** little, she loved to experiment.
- Amir **helped** **(help)** all his friends when he was young.
- When my sister **was** **(is)** a child, she played with blocks.
- When Nadia was young, she **started** **(start)** making new things.
- Dad **used** **(use)** the screwdriver to open the cell phone yesterday.
- Nour **was** **(be)** never angry when he was little.

(المنوحي - 2024)

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

safety – electricity – electrician – teacher – screwdriver

When Lama was a child, she was very curious. She always carried a **(1) screwdriver** and opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had **(2) electricity**. Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about **(3) safety** with electricity. Now, Lama is an **(4) electrician** and she loves her job very much.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيل - 2024)

When Salma was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Salma when you want to change something in your house.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Salma can work as an electrician or an architect in the future?

I think she can work as an architect.

2. Why did Salma use the tape measure?

To measure the things and make them.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The text talks about

- Ⓐ Heba Ⓑ Mona Ⓒ Salma's sister Ⓓ Salma

4. When Salma was a baby, she played with

- Ⓐ blocks Ⓑ dolls Ⓒ cars Ⓓ bikes

➔ Punctate the following:

1. Lara Talia, and amir are all adults

Lara, Talia, and Amir are all adults.

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "Pros" are the points about something.

- Ⓐ bad Ⓑ good Ⓒ easy Ⓓ difficult

2. One of the of being a mail carrier is carrying heavy mail bags.

- Ⓐ pros Ⓑ ants Ⓒ cons Ⓓ tons

3. A mail carrier works all day.

- Ⓐ at home Ⓑ at office Ⓒ inside Ⓓ outside

4. It's great for the mail carrier when the weather is

- Ⓐ hot Ⓑ windy Ⓒ cold Ⓓ good

5. likes meeting the mail carrier.

- Ⓐ Everybody Ⓑ Nobody Ⓒ No one Ⓓ No people

6. Being a mail carrier is not a/an job.

- Ⓐ good Ⓑ important Ⓒ easy Ⓓ useful

7. There are many that made our school.

- Ⓐ doctors Ⓑ teachers Ⓒ workers Ⓓ students

8. The fix the cars and buses that bring children to school.

- Ⓐ plumbers Ⓑ cleaners Ⓒ electricians Ⓓ mechanics

9. keep the school clean.

- Ⓐ Bus drivers Ⓑ Teachers Ⓒ Cleaners Ⓓ Plumbers

10. The help us use lights.

- Ⓐ cleaners Ⓑ doctors Ⓒ electricians Ⓓ mail carriers

11. The electrician connects

- Ⓐ bus Ⓑ bag Ⓒ garbage Ⓓ electricity

12. Our bring the children to school.

- Ⓐ garbage collectors Ⓑ mechanics Ⓒ plumbers Ⓓ bus drivers

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

mail carrier – nice – hot – walk – outside

There are some good and bad points about being a mail carrier. On the one hand, mail carriers are (1) outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very (2) hot or cold. Mail carriers (3) walk all day and get a lot of exercise. Everybody likes meeting the (4) mail carrier.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

My name is Tamer. I want to be a mail carrier. But I will be outside all day and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or cold. My brother Ali wants to be an electrician to connect electricity so that people can use lights easily. My friend Maged wants to be a bus driver to bring the children to school. My friend Noha wants to be a mechanic to fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why does Maged want to be a bus driver?

To bring the children to school.

2. Summarize the text in two sentences.

Everyone likes working a different job.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali wants to be a/an

Ⓐ engineer

Ⓑ electrician

Ⓒ mail carrier

Ⓓ teacher

4. wants to be a mechanic.

Ⓐ Tamer

Ⓑ Maged

Ⓒ Noha

Ⓓ Father

➔ Punctate the following:

1. workers keep the school clean

(الشرفيـة - 2024)

Workers keep the school clean.

2. what does the bus driver do

(المنوفية - 2024)

What does the bus driver do?**(6) Unit six "What do you do"****(1) Lesson one**

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars, buses, and trains are forms of

Ⓐ foods

Ⓑ colors

Ⓒ transportation

Ⓓ schools

2. Ahmed is a He works in the tourism industry.

Ⓐ farmer

Ⓑ librarian

Ⓒ guide

Ⓓ fisherman

3. Fishermen use nets and to catch fish.

Ⓐ animals

Ⓑ hotels

Ⓒ schools

Ⓓ boats

4. My father is a farmer. He works in the industry.

Ⓐ farming

Ⓑ fishing

Ⓒ education

Ⓓ tourism

5. Habiba is a guide. She works with from all over the world.

Ⓐ boats

Ⓑ fish

Ⓒ tourists

Ⓓ animals

6. Before you pick up the fruit, you give them to grow.

Ⓐ books

Ⓑ nutrients

Ⓒ nets

Ⓓ hotels

7. A works in seas or rivers. He catches a lot of fish.

Ⓐ plumber

Ⓑ teacher

Ⓒ fisherman

Ⓓ guide

(الشرفيـة - 2024)

8. grow food for us.

Ⓐ Farmers

Ⓑ Teachers

Ⓒ Doctors

Ⓓ Vets

9. Teachers work in the industry.

Ⓐ farming

Ⓑ tourism

Ⓒ education

Ⓓ fishing

10. A farmer sends the fruit to the to make orange juice.

Ⓐ hotel

Ⓑ library

Ⓒ sea

Ⓓ factory

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. I **am** (be) a farmer and I work in the farming industry.
2. My father **is** (be) a librarian.
3. They **are** (be) guides. They work in the tourism industry.
4. The fisherman **wakes** (wake) up early and goes out on his boat.
5. Mom **sells** (sell) fish in the market.
6. We **send** (sending) the oranges to the factory to make orange juice.

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

electricity – job – information – library – librarian

(الإسمايليت - 2024)

I'm Sherifa. I like books very much. I'm a **(1) librarian**. I work in a school **(2) library**. It's my **(3) job** to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the **(4) information** they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الإسماعيليت - 2024)

My name is Mai. My father is a fisherman; he works in the fishing industry. He wakes up very early and goes out on his boat to catch fish. Then, in the afternoon, he comes back and sells his fish. My uncle is a farmer; he works in the farming industry. He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients. My brother is a guide; he explains history of the places that tourists visit.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who explains the history to tourists?

A guide.

2. What does a farmer do?

He looks after the trees and gives them water and nutrients.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 Ⓐ farmers Ⓑ fishermen Ⓒ guides Ⓓ jobs
4. A goes out on his boat and catches fish.
 Ⓐ farmer Ⓑ fisherman Ⓒ guide Ⓓ teacher

➔ Punctate the following:

1. what do librarians do

What do librarians do?

2. i work in the tourism industry

(القاهرة - 2024)

I work in the tourism industry.

(2) Lesson two

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We can make from energy sources.
 Ⓐ shoes Ⓑ videos Ⓒ electricity Ⓓ fun
2. energy is a renewable energy source that comes from the sun.
 Ⓐ Oil Ⓑ Solar Ⓒ Wind Ⓓ Gas
3. energy is clean.
 Ⓐ Coal Ⓑ Gas Ⓒ Oil Ⓓ Solar
4. I like looking of the window.
 Ⓐ at Ⓑ in Ⓒ out Ⓓ on
5. sources can grow again or never run out.
 Ⓐ Renewable Ⓑ Non-renewable Ⓒ Wrong Ⓓ Right
6. Mango is my favorite
 Ⓐ food Ⓑ place Ⓒ vegetable Ⓓ fruit

7. We get wood from
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ houses Ⓒ trees Ⓓ money
8. Coal and oil are energy sources.
 Ⓐ renewable Ⓑ non-renewable Ⓒ new Ⓓ old
9. The chair is made of
 Ⓐ seeds Ⓑ wood Ⓒ oil Ⓓ coal
10. They cut the tree yesterday.
 Ⓐ down Ⓑ in Ⓒ on Ⓓ at

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

wind – play – use – electricity – sources

(الاسكندريه - 2024)

Renewable energy (1) sources are everywhere. Wave, solar, and (2) wind energy are renewable energy sources. We can use these sources to make (3) electricity. There are many things today that (4) use electricity.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

Ali and Waleed are brothers. Each brother had a beautiful orange tree next to his house. The brothers ate beautiful oranges and their children played under the trees. One day, Waleed decided to sell his tree because he needed money. He cut the wood and sold it. Waleed was happy. Next year, Ali's orange tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave Ali more oranges. Waleed looked out of the window. There was no orange tree. He had no oranges and no more wood. Ali helped Waleed plant an orange seed to grow into a big tree.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Waleed decide to cut down his orange tree?

Because he needed money.

2. How did Ali help Waleed?

Ali Helped Waleed plant and orange seed to grow into a big tree.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. Ali and Waleed are
 Ⓐ sisters Ⓑ friends Ⓒ classmates Ⓓ brothers
4. Each brother had a beautiful tree next to his house
 Ⓐ orange Ⓑ banana Ⓒ mango Ⓓ strawberry

➔ Punctate the following:

1. sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger

Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger.

2. would you cut the mango tree

(البحيرة - 2024)

Would you cut the mango tree?

(3) Lesson three

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The old sells fresh fish.
 Ⓐ mom Ⓑ grandpa Ⓒ mechanic Ⓓ fisherman
2. The old man around the village in an old van.
 Ⓐ walks Ⓑ shouts Ⓒ drives Ⓓ swims
3. I was when I couldn't find my book.
 Ⓐ happy Ⓑ disappointed Ⓒ excited Ⓓ interested
4. Grandpa was a He could fix cars.
 Ⓐ farmer Ⓑ fisherman Ⓒ guide Ⓓ mechanic
5. The old man was when my mom fixed the engine.
 Ⓐ disappointed Ⓑ sad Ⓒ worried Ⓓ surprised
6. I can't start the van. The doesn't work.
 Ⓐ fish Ⓑ engine Ⓒ job Ⓓ village

7. Nour ice cream. She never eats it.
 Ⓐ likes Ⓑ dislikes Ⓒ disagrees Ⓓ disobeys
8. Where is my cat? It somewhere.
 Ⓐ disappeared Ⓑ disagreed Ⓒ disliked Ⓓ disappointed
9. A: I think pizza is the best food ever. B: No, I with you.
 Ⓐ agree Ⓑ dislike Ⓒ disagree Ⓓ obey
10. Manal was sorry because she her teacher.
 Ⓐ obeyed Ⓑ liked Ⓒ agreed Ⓓ disobeyed

➔ Read and write the correct form of the word(s):

1. We shouldn't disobey (obey) our parents.
 2. Hossam dislikes (likes) fish. He never eats it.
 3. Ola was disappointed (appointed) when she lost the race.
 4. The two sisters always disagree (agree). They never agree.
 5. My keys disappeared (appeared). Can you help me find them?

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

village – surprised – disappointed – engine – fish

(جبر - 2024)

There was an old fisherman in our village. He drove around the (1) village in an old van. He sold fresh (2) fish. Everyone liked his fresh fish. One day, he was (3) disappointed because he couldn't start the van. Mom fixed the (4) engine and helped the old man.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

There was an old fisherman who liked his job. He drove around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed. My grandpa saw the man. It was hot in the sun. he wanted to help. He looked at the old van's engine. It was a very simple problem. he fixed the engine. The fisherman was surprised and happy. He gave my grandpa ten fresh fish.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. Who fixed the van?

The writers grandpa.

2. Why was the fisherman happy at the end?

Because his van got fixed.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The fisherman was because he couldn't start his van
 Ⓐ sad Ⓑ surprised Ⓒ happy Ⓓ fresh
4. The underlined word "simple" means
 Ⓐ hard Ⓑ big Ⓒ easy Ⓓ young

➔ Punctate the following:

1. it's a very simple problem

It's a very simple problem.

2. The fisherman couldnt start his van

(الشرفيت - 2024)

The fisherman couldn't start his van.

(4.5) Lesson four and five

➔ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It's hard work, but it's
 Ⓐ bad Ⓑ exciting Ⓒ boring Ⓓ difficult
2. For teachers, every day is
 Ⓐ boring Ⓑ similar Ⓒ the same Ⓓ different
3. A good teacher can change students'
 Ⓐ books Ⓑ lives Ⓒ trash Ⓓ questions

4. Good teachers need to their students.
 Ⓐ know Ⓑ learn Ⓒ encourage Ⓓ think
5. Teachers need to think
 Ⓐ slowly Ⓑ quickly Ⓒ nearly Ⓓ hardly
6. A good teacher should be very
 Ⓐ surprising Ⓑ different Ⓒ exciting Ⓓ patient
7. We should show to people around us.
 Ⓐ teachers Ⓑ students Ⓒ questions Ⓓ respect
8. I respect the cleaner. I don't trash.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ throw Ⓒ buy Ⓓ sell
9. I say thank you to the when I get off the bus.
 Ⓐ bus driver Ⓑ librarian Ⓒ teacher Ⓓ cleaner
10. I respect the librarian. I put my books back on the
 Ⓐ bag Ⓑ bus Ⓒ shelf Ⓓ school

➔ Read and complete the text with the words:

(الفأرة - 2024)

change – surprising – easy – patient – encourage

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask (1) **surprising** questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to (2) **encourage** their students. They need to be very (3) **patient**. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can (4) **change** their students' lives.

➔ Read the following then answer the questions:

(الجيرة - 2024)

We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people. I respect the teacher. I listen to him carefully. I respect the cleaner. I don't throw litter. I show respect to the people around me. I respect the bus driver. I say thank you when I get off the bus. I respect the dentist. I listen to his/her advice.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. How do we show respect to the teacher?

We listen to him carefully.

2. Is it important to show respect to the people around us?

Yes, it is.

B: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The general idea of the text is about
 Ⓐ dentist Ⓑ teacher Ⓒ respect Ⓓ cleaner
4. We respect to the bus driver.
 Ⓐ eat Ⓑ hop Ⓒ show Ⓓ jump

➔ Punctate the following:

1. i listen to my teacher carefully

I listen to my teacher carefully.

2. what job do you want to have

What job do you want to have?

(الاسكندريه - 2024)

كيفية طباعة صفحات معينة من ملف معين مثلا ازاي نطبع الصفحات من صفحة 4 الى صفحة 9

